

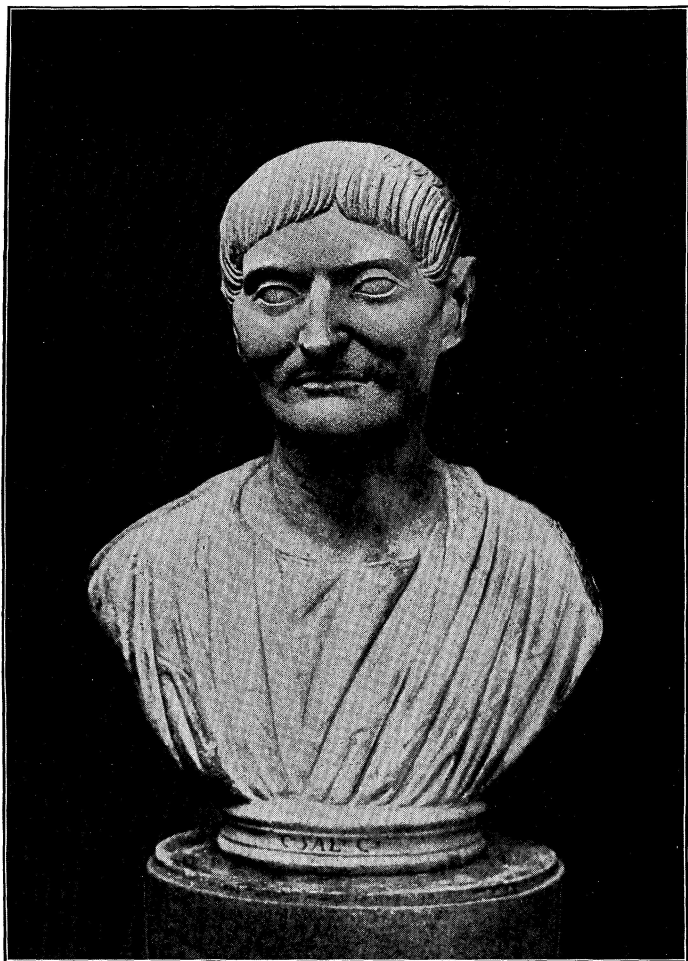






TIPPANY & CO.





CAIUS SALLUSTUS CRISPUS

From the St. Petersburg bust

C. SALLVSTI CRISPI  
BELLVM CATILINAE

EDITED WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES  
AND VOCABULARY

BY

DANIEL A. PENICK

UNIVERSITY OF TEXAS



D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS  
BOSTON                  NEW YORK                  CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1908,  
BY D. C. HEATH & CO.  
Printed in U. S. A.  
2 F 4

## PREFACE

THE text of this edition of Sallust's *Bellum Catilinae* is based largely upon the edition of Professor Eussner (Leipzig, 1900), but a certain number of changes have been made, especially in the assimilation of consonants. All other available texts and commentaries have been carefully consulted. I have retained the archaic spelling as follows: *o* in the nominative and accusative of the second declension after *u* consonant and in *aequos*; *os* for *or* in nominatives of the third declension; *u* for *i* in such words as *lubet* and in all superlatives; *o* for *e* in such words as *divorsus*, *o* for *u* in such words as *volgus*. Assimilation of consonants has been observed practically everywhere, except in words compounded with *ad*. The traditional principles of syllabification have been followed.

In the marking of quantities before *gn*, the results of the investigations of Professors Buck and Bennett have been adopted to some extent, but the long vowel has been retained not only in all words derived from stems with a long vowel, but also in those words which furnish inscriptional evidence of a long vowel, as *signum* and kindred words, *dignus* and kindred words. In writing short vowels in both the genitive and the dative of such words as *huius*, *huic*, *cuius*, *cui*, *eius*, etc., I have departed from established usage, especially in the case of the genitive.

In the preparation of the volume an effort has been made to help the student to an appreciation of Sallust as an author. In the introduction his peculiarities in archaic

spelling and in other archaic usages, in colloquialisms, in syntax, in the use of figures, and in general style, have been pointed out in detail. The footnotes to the text refer to the introduction and to the syntactical appendix and will not only help the student to understand the author's meaning, but will at the same time show his style through his syntax. The notes give fuller explanations, where needed; but they largely supplement and reënforce the syntactical appendix and the introduction. In the syntactical appendix references are given to four grammars on every point of syntax involved in a study of the text. The collection of rules will also furnish a means for the systematic review of syntax in general. The vocabulary is virtually a word index containing line references for every meaning of every word, besides giving in most instances either the etymological or the literal meaning from which all other meanings may be derived. Many idiomatic phrases are translated. Proper names have been placed in a separate vocabulary.

It gives me pleasure to acknowledge my indebtedness to Professor Gonzalez Lodge, one of the editors-in-chief of the series, and to Professors E. W. Fay and Thomas Fitz-Hugh, for many helpful criticisms and suggestions. Professors Lodge and Fay read all the proof sheets with the greatest care. I also thank Miss Edith Symington of the San Antonio High School, Mr. William Longino of the Sam Houston Normal School, Mr. D. A. Skinner of St. Louis, all graduates of the University of Texas, for valuable assistance, and the publishers for uniform courtesy.

DANIEL A. PENICK.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	vii
BELLUM CATILINAE . . . . .	I
NOTES . . . . .	49
SYNTACTICAL APPENDIX . . . . .	81
VOCABULARY . . . . .	107
VOCABULARY OF PROPER NAMES . . . . .	163



## ILLUSTRATIONS

SALLUST . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
From the St. Petersburg bust.	
	FACING PAGE
MAP OF ITALY . . . . .	I
CICERO . . . . .	16
From a bust in the Royal Gallery at Madrid.	
CICERO ADDRESSING THE SENATE . . . . .	20
THE MULVIAN BRIDGE . . . . .	29
From a photograph.	
CAESAR . . . . .	33
From the marble bust in the British Museum.	
CATO . . . . .	38
From the doubtful bust of Cato and Portia in the Capitoline Museum at Rome.	
SECTION OF THE TULLIANUM . . . . .	43
From Middleton's <i>Ancient Rome</i> .	

# INTRODUCTION

## I. CATILINE'S ENVIRONMENT

THE conspiracy of Catiline was a natural result of certain evil conditions at Rome, which, during the last two centuries of the Republic, grew rapidly worse until they finally brought about disruption. Especially during the last century of the Republic, in which Catiline lived and acted, civil conflict, engendered by corruption in its worst forms among all classes of society, was rife, and worked itself out in disputes between the people, or the Democracy, and the Senate, or the Aristocracy. Two of the most renowned and successful leaders in this rivalry were Marius and Sulla, whose bloody wars and bloodier proscriptions threw the whole world into unrest and cost Rome the lives of thousands of her citizens. And when victory remained at last with Sulla, property was confiscated; whole districts were given to his soldiers; citizenship was bestowed upon the slaves of his proscribed enemies.

In such an atmosphere Catiline was born and reared, for he was thirty years old when Sulla died, and had been his active partisan. Such surroundings could only increase the natural weakness of an unscrupulous ambition such as Catiline and a number of others possessed. He was no worse than many another of his time, only more daring and more persistent. An aristocrat, naturally clever and attractive, he was the center of all the younger set who were in any way discontented; and who was not discontented? No one was sure of his life. The rivalry

between democracy and aristocracy continued to rage in spite of Sulla's effort to bring order out of the chaos that he had helped to create, and in the general conflict this man and that sought to advance his individual interests — a condition of affairs that was destined to continue until the final overthrow of the Republic and the establishment of the one-man government. Thousands of debtors, profligates, unemployed, disaffected, who had been ruined by upheavals under Marius and Sulla, were only waiting for a leader, that they might regain what they had lost by robbery, and avenge the murder of those nearest and dearest to them. Catiline became their willing leader. After trying for several years by regular process of political preferment to get his hands on the reins of government, in the year 63 B.C., during the absence of Pompey, Sulla's successor, who had been himself first an aristocrat, then the leader of the popular party, and finally the champion of the Senate and the aristocracy, Catiline all but succeeded in securing control of Rome by wholesale murders and burnings. As it was, recourse was had to war, and thousands of lives were sacrificed.

## II. THE LIFE OF CATILINE

**Lucius Sergius Catilina** was born about 108 B.C. of a distinguished but ruined patrician family. He is first known as a partisan of Sulla and a leader in Sulla's awful proscriptions. In 68 B.C. he became praetor. He would have tried for the consulship in 66 B.C., but was disqualified for the candidacy by a pending impeachment trial for oppression in his province. Even thus early he conspired with others to murder the consuls, but failed twice because of his own rash haste. Having actually entered the race for the consulship in 64 B.C. and having suffered

defeat, he determined upon a second conspiracy, for which the time was ripe, for which he had plenty of material, and in which he would probably have succeeded had not his every plan been revealed to Cicero by Fulvia, the mistress of one of his fellow-conspirators. His final plans, matured immediately after his defeat in his second race for the consulship, in 63 B.C., were frustrated by the vigilance of Cicero, who, having unmasked Catiline and so driven him out of the city, then had his chief associates (who had remained in the city after Catiline's departure) condemned and executed. Catiline was defeated and slain in the battle of Pistoria, January, 62 B.C.

### III. THE LIFE AND CHARACTER OF SALLUST

**Gaius Sallustius Crispus**, who has given us an account of this conspiracy, grew up in the same atmosphere. He was born in Sabine territory at Amiternum, 86 B.C., the year of Marius's death, when Catiline, a sketch of whose life he was to write, was only twenty-two, but already old in murder and other crimes. Nothing is known of Sallust's youth, nor when he went to Rome, nor the extent and character of his education. His later productions indicate considerable early training; in fact he speaks of having had literary ambitions in early life (*Cat. c. 4*). He drifted, however, with the tide of the times, which swept in the direction of politics, or war, or both. Of plebeian origin, he was, of course, a democrat, in opposition to Sulla and Pompey. That he lived a dissolute life in harmony with the times may be implied from two facts. First, after having become a member of the Senate, possibly as early as 59 B.C., by having been elected quaestor—certainly as early as 52 B.C., when he was tribune of the people—he was expelled in 50 B.C. upon the initiative of the censor, **Appius**

**Claudius Pulcher**, on the charge of scandalous living. This was probably a political move; but at best it leaves Sallust in bad company, though it does not imply that he was worse than the people who expelled him. Secondly, justification for his expulsion is found in the fact that when, in an open brawl on the streets of Rome, Clodius, the leader of the popular faction, was killed by the followers of Milo, the leader of the senatorial faction, Sallust, though tribune and so an official leader, made no effort to calm the excited mob, but rather incited them to deeds of violence; and worse still, Sallust's reputation was so unsavory that a persistent tradition has come down to us that Sallust's excuse for opposing Milo was that Milo had previously punished him in person for too great intimacy with his wife.

When the factional strife of Marius and Sulla, of Clodius and Milo, was transferred to Caesar and Pompeius, and civil war again broke out in 49 B.C., Sallust naturally espoused the cause of Caesar, whose favor he certainly enjoyed. Through Caesar's influence and patronage he was, as early as 47 B.C. (possibly even earlier, as a doubtful authority tells us), reinstated in the senate either by being again elected praetor, or simply by the power of his patron. Other evidences of Caesar's favor are his appointment as a commissioned officer in the disastrous campaign against the Pompeians in Illyricum; his being sent to quell a mutiny among Caesar's veterans, in which he was unsuccessful; his being intrusted with the leadership of an expedition to Africa, when he succeeded in seizing the island, Cercina, a base of supplies for the enemy; and his appointment to the proconsulship of Africa, upon its first organization in 46 B.C. These evidences of Caesar's confidence indicate some ability in Sallust, whatever may be said of his character.

Nothing is known of his rule in Africa except that he returned to Rome the next year with much wealth. What we know, or think we know, of his character up to this time leads us to conclude that he took advantage of his opportunities to amass wealth without regard to the rights of others. Upon his return to Rome he invested large sums of money in a palatial residence and splendid gardens on the Quirinal hill, where he lived in retirement the remaining ten years of his life. This palace afterwards passed into the possession of the imperial family, and several of the emperors lived there. If he had political ambitions after his return, they could never have been gratified, because his powerful leader, Caesar, was assassinated the following year, 44 B.C.

The period of Sallust's retirement was spent in study and in the production of works of literature. Nothing is known of him during those last ten years; but the tenor of his literary productions indicates a sober, quiet, abstemious life, quite the reverse of his early years. It is hardly fair to say, as many do, that his life does not conform to the standard set by his books. We may safely claim that his closing years were lived according to the standards he proposed, which were excellent for a Roman of that day. Why not, then, give him credit for his reformation? Because a man has lived a wicked life, and later expresses disapproval of his former deeds, both in word and in truth, we cannot reasonably accuse him of inconsistency. We should rather applaud his change of heart and life. If there is any doubt about the change in Sallust's case, it is only charitable to give him the benefit of it.

Another evidence that Sallust had different views of life, after his retirement had given him time for reflection upon his own life and upon affairs of state, may be found in his

attitude toward Cicero as expressed in the *Catiline*. There might readily have been hard feeling between them over the Clodian matter, if for no other reason, inasmuch as Cicero defended Milo, against whom Sallust was so bitter, and they must have been on opposite sides throughout life. The belief in their hostility has been so persistently prevalent that each is charged with having delivered a bitter invective against the other, and a late writer manufactured the story of Sallust's marriage with Terentia, Cicero's divorced wife. If Sallust wrote the invective against Cicero, he did so during the earlier days of strife. He may have married Terentia in spite of the fact that she was ten years his senior, and in spite of the fact that she was Cicero's divorced wife, but not because she was his divorced wife. There is no foundation for either story. On the other hand, there is not a word of hostility to Cicero in Sallust's *Catiline*, but an attitude of respectful consideration, in spite of the fact that Cicero had received great glory from his conduct of the state under such trying circumstances. Sallust, when he wrote, was far enough from the scene both in time and feeling to view the conspiracy and its overthrow with fair-mindedness, and he was man enough to give due credit for right actions to one who must have been a bitter enemy.

#### IV. SALLUST'S WORKS

Besides the *Bellum Catilinæ*, already referred to, Sallust wrote the *Bellum Jugurthinum* and the *Historiae*. The scene of the *Bellum Jugurthinum* was Numidia in Africa, from the time of Masinissa, the grandfather, 204 B.C., to the death of Jugurtha, 104 B.C. The material was collected during his proconsulship in Africa. Its composition was subsequent to that of the *Bellum Catilinæ*.

Sallust's latest and most voluminous work, the *Histories*, in five books, treated in great detail the very important period lying between Sulla's death in 78 B.C. and Pompeius's rise in 67 B.C. Of the *Histories* we have, besides well-preserved speeches and letters, no mean number of fragments; too little, however, to enable us to test the verdict whereby, in his own and subsequent ages, the *Histories* were declared his best work. We cannot, then, fully determine, at first hand, Sallust's proper position as a historian or man of letters, because we have not his best work; but we can see the advance from the *Catiline* to the *Jugurthine War*, and we can imagine something of the still greater advance from the *Jugurtha* to the *Histories* by a careful study of the extant fragments, especially since we have the testimony of such critics as Martial, who speaks of him as *prīmus Romānā Crispus in historiā*; Quintilian, who compares him favorably with the great Greek historian, Thucydides, his supposed model; and Tacitus, who calls him *Rerum Rōmānōrum flōrentissimus auctor*.

## V. PECULIARITIES OF SALLUST'S STYLE

Many peculiarities to be mentioned here belong to Sallust in common with other writers; for the most part, however, his individuality is indicated by striking irregularities as compared with other prose writers of his day, the genuine old Roman flavor which gives him an unusual freshness of style. To feel and appreciate his style, one must examine these peculiarities:—

### I. Fondness for archaisms.

(1) The stem vowel of the second declension (o) had been weakened in classical Latin to u except after u, vowel or consonant, and even there the retention of o was more or less of an affectation. Sallust retains it: *ignāvos*, c. 11, l. 195; *novos*, c. 23, l. 458.



(2) Many nominatives in **-or** of the third declension had originally **-os** from stems in **-s**. In the oblique cases **-s** between vowels became **-r**, and this change affected the nominative. Nominatives in **-os** are found in early Latin, rarely in the classical period. Sallust uses them: **colōs**, c. 15, l. 278; **honōs**, c. 20, l. 381; **lepōs**, c. 25, l. 487.

(3) The gen. sing. of the fourth declension frequently had **-ī** in early Latin, and in some words carried it over into the classical period: **senātī**, c. 30, l. 551; 36, l. 676.

(4) Sallust showed decided preference for **u** instead of **i** in such words as **lubet**, c. 5, l. 82; **lēgitumum**, c. 6, l. 118; **minumē**, c. 6, l. 125; **manufēstōs**, c. 41, l. 777; **existumābant**, c. 48, l. 904; and often for **o** instead of **e** as in **dīvorsī**, c. 2, l. 18; **dīvorsō**, c. 52, l. 1127; for **o** instead of **u**, as in **volgī**, c. 29, l. 537; **voltis**, c. 40, l. 755. Sallust lived in a transitional stage, but nearer its close, so his use of these older forms of spelling, where there was a choice, indicated very clearly his preference.

(5) The older gerund and gerundive ending in **-undus** lasted even down to classical times, especially in words of the third and fourth conjugations. Sallust uses this in preference to the regular classical form in **-endus**: **colundō**, c. 4, l. 65; **dicundī**, c. 52, l. 1088; **vīsundī**, c. 61, l. 1395.

(6) **Forem**, **ferēs**, **foret**, **forent** were probably originally used for **futūrus essem**, etc.; but later **forem**, etc. became the virtual equivalent of **essem**, etc. Sallust uses the forms freely, and about 80 per cent follow the older usage and are equal to the future forms, **futūrus essem**, etc.: c. 18, l. 341; c. 20, l. 363; c. 31, l. 578.

(7) Some individual words require mention here: **portō** for **ferō**, c. 6, l. 116; **tempestās** for **tempus**, c. 7, l. 127; 17, l. 316; 22, l. 430; 53, l. 1215; **suppliciis** for **supplicā-**

*tiōnibus*, c. 9, l. 164; *venēnis* in the generalized sense of *drug*, c. 11, l. 199; *necessitūdō* for *necessitās*, c. 17, l. 313; *superāre* for *superesse*, c. 20, l. 392; *neglēgeris*, an old form for *neglēxeris*, c. 51, l. 1032; *exitium* for *exitum*, c. 55, l. 1253.

2. Fondness for unusual forms, words, expressions.

(1) The perf. indic. third plural was in the poets and the historians preferably *-ēre*, and in classical prose *-ērunt* is the normal form; only Cæsar and Cicero avoid the shorter form altogether; *-ēre* seems to have been the popular form, and is much used by later writers. Sallust uses *-ērunt* only four times in the *Catiline*, c. 2c, l. 389; c. 45, l. 836; c. 51, l. 987; c. 51, l. 1067. This and other colloquialisms are put in this section indiscriminately instead of being placed in a separate section, because they all tend to emphasize Sallust's variation from other Roman writers along the same general line.

(2) Frequentative verbs are numerous used. See note, l. 19. Sallust's partiality for them is illustrated in c. 6, l. 120, where *cōsultābant* is used with the dative, the construction of *cōsulere*. See note; cf. *ductāverat*, c. 11, l. 206; *rogitāre*, c. 31, l. 573; *agitābat*, c. 48, l. 886; etc.

(3) A number of verbs are employed absolutely, contrary to general usage: *parāre*, c. 6, l. 113; *novandī*, c. 39, l. 728; cf. c. 55, l. 1241; *officiunt*, c. 51, l. 963.

(4) Words employed in other unusual ways:—

a. The frequent and pronounced use of *virtūs* = *mental prowess*, in addition to its more common uses, c. 1, l. 10; c. 2, l. 34.

b. *Dehinc* for *deinde*, c. 3, l. 49.

c. *Suprā* = *from times past*, c. 5, l. 95.

d. *Quippe* = *enim*, c. 11, l. 214; c. 19, l. 346; c. 52, l. 1145.

e. **Īnfēstus**, c. 15, l. 276, is mostly active in Sallust = *causing trouble* instead of *being troubled*, *hostile* instead of *molested*.

f. **Plēraque** = an adjective in the sing., c. 17, l. 313; see note.

g. **Longius** = **diūtius**, c. 29, l. 534, only here in Sallust.

h. **Opitulātī sunt**, c. 33, l. 617, a rare word, only here in Sallust.

i. **Havētō**, c. 35, l. 660; the form is probably colloquial; cf. **habētōte**, c. 52, l. 1138; see note.

j. **Multō** = **longē**, c. 36, l. 671; see note.

k. **Innoxii**, c. 39, l. 726, in a passive sense = *unharméd* instead of *harmless* or *blameless*.

l. **Manufēstus**, c. 41, l. 777, used of persons, is rare except in poetry and late prose.

m. **Temporibus**, c. 42, l. 778, frequently used in the plural thus by Sallust where the singular seems more natural.

n. **Conveniunt** used actively, transitively = *assemble* or *call together* instead of *assemble* in the intransitive sense; c. 44, l. 811.

o. **Quī** = **quis**, c. 44, l. 821.

p. **Nūlla**, colloquial for **nōn**, c. 52, l. 1148.

(5) Combinations of words and changes of expression.

a. **Vitam . . . trāseant**, c. 1, l. 2, for the more usual **vītam . . . dēgere**; cf. c. 2, l. 36, and see note.

b. **Quam maxumē longam** = **quam longissumam**, c. 1, l. 9; cf. c. 36, l. 672, c. 41, l. 777, c. 48, l. 888, and often for similar combinations.

c. A verbal noun with an adverbial modifier, **mātūrē factō**, c. 1, l. 15; cf. c. 8, l. 158; c. 31, l. 589; c. 52, l. 1110.

d. The frequency of partitive and distributive apposition, especially in mixed form, **rēgēs . . . pars . . . aliī**, c. 2,

l. 18; cf. **quī . . . alii . . . omnēs**, c. 37, l. 691; c. 38, l. 718; **alii . . . pars . . . plērīque**; c. 48, l. 903.

*e.* **Sicutī ego accēpī**, c. 6, l. 100; **sicutī ego aestumō**, c. 8, l. 149, are some of the stock phrases with which he is always assuming responsibility for his individual views.

*f.* There are frequent striking summaries, **ita . . . facta erat**, c. 6, l. 106; **tanta invāserat**, c. 36, l. 679.

*g.* **Nōn . . . ūllus = nūllus**, c. 7, l. 136, used here for emphasis, symmetry, anaphora.

*h.* **Ad hōc**, c. 14, l. 252, = *besides, furthermore, in addition*, is very common in Sallust; it is used here in conjunction with **praetereā** and **postrēmō**.

*i.* **Cōnscius animus = conscience**, c. 14, l. 254; cf. **cōnscientia**, c. 15, l. 277.

*j.* **Incerta prō certīs (mālēbant) = bellum quam pācem mālēbant**, c. 17, l. 315.

*k.* **Dē quā**, c. 18, l. 323, where the relative refers to an implied substantive antecedent in **coniūrāvēre** above.

*l.* **Saeva multa**, c. 19, l. 355, for the more regular **multa et saeva**; cf. **multa nefanda**, c. 15, l. 268 and **multa nefāria**, c. 51, l. 976; see c. 20, l. 366 and c. 51, l. 1058 for the more regular construction.

*m.* **Fīdūciam tribuit = fidem facit**, c. 35, l. 644, is probably colloquial.

*n.* **Ex nūllā cōnscientiā . . . dēcrēvī**, c. 35, l. 646, for **nōn ex cōnscientiā . . . dēcrēvī**, a variation from **nōn statui**.

*o.* **Dē culpā**, c. 35, l. 647, used colloquially for the gen.

*p.* **Prō** with the abl. of respect, **meā cōnsuētūdine**, c. 35, l. 650, is also probably colloquial; see note.

*q.* **Ea vērō**, c. 37, l. 688, strongly emphatic reduplicative nominative frequent in Sallust; cf. **eī** just below.

*r.* **Patrimōniis āmissis**, c. 37, l. 691, a change from the relative clause; it stands between two.

*s. Cēterī . . . veniunt . . . Caepārius . . .*, c. 46, l. 853, generalization followed by specialization; also common in Greek historians; cf. *alia . . . incendium*, c. 48, l. 887.

*t. Per indutiās*, c. 51, l. 976, coördinated with *in pāce*; see note.

*u. In nōbīs*, c. 51, l. 1080, a change from the dative of possession, *illīs*, l. 1079.

*v. Marī atque terrā*, c. 53, l. 1203, a violent change from the established *terrā marique*, solely to vary from *domī militiaeque*.

3. Syntax — constructions peculiar to Sallust or exaggerated by him, or employed in an unusual sense: —

(1) *Sēsē student praestāre*, c. 1, l. 1, the acc. and infin. for the more usual simple infin.; see note.

(2) The unusual frequency with which adjectives and participles are used as nouns, *sua*, c. 2, l. 19; *bonō*, c. 2, l. 33; *bonī*, c. 7, l. 128; and often.

(3) The use of *igitur*, not only very often, but at the beginning of the sentence, contrary to the common usage, c. 2, l. 17; c. 4, twice, ll. 62, 72, and often.

(4) *Intentus* with the abl., instead of the dative or *ad* (*in*) with the accusative, c. 2, l. 40; c. 54, l. 1230.

(5) Preference for *tametsī*, c. 3, twice, ll. 46, 57; c. 20, l. 359; c. 21, l. 412; c. 31, l. 575.

(6) *Eōdem regressus*, c. 4, l. 68; similar uses of this and other adverbs are numerous.

(7) *Suī profusus*, c. 5, l. 83, the only instance of this word with the gen.; cf. *pecūniae liberālēs*, c. 7, l. 142, the only instance of *liberālis* with the gen.

(8) The extreme frequency of the historical infin., which is used in almost every chapter, beginning with c. 6, l. 111.

(9) *Cōservandae libertātis*, c. 6, l. 122, the gen. of the gerundive without *causā* or *grātiā* to express purpose.

(10) Irregular agreement is quite prevalent: **iuventūs . . . discēbat . . . habēbant**, c. 7, l. 132; see note; **eās** and **eam**, c. 7, l. 140, agree with their predicates; **iūs bonum-que . . . valēbat**, c. 9, l. 161; **glōria, imperium, potentia sequēbātur**, c. 12, l. 217; cf. c. 14, several examples; **nī virtūs fidēsque vostra spectāta mihi forent**, c. 20, l. 363.

(11) The use of **que . . . que**, c. 9, l. 166; c. 36, l. 675.

(12) **Quō** without a comparative in final clauses, c. 11, l. 206; c. 14, l. 250; c. 33, l. 609; etc.

(13) **Quippe quī** with the indic., c. 13, l. 234; see note; c. 48, l. 889; cf. **utpote quī** with the subj., c. 57, l. 1286.

(14) The frequent use of the historical present, **convocat**, c. 17, l. 303; and very often.

(15) **Cēterum** as an adversative particle, c. 17, l. 313; c. 51, l. 1036.

(16) **Cum . . . emunt . . . vexant**, c. 20, l. 395, concessive **cum** as used in Plautus and Terence. Sallust shows a decided preference for the indic. everywhere.

(17) **Litteris . . . docta, psallere . . . multa alia**, c. 25, l. 477, where **docta** is used with the abl., the infin., and the acc., a remarkable instance of striving for variety.

4. Rhetorical effects, not peculiar to Sallust, but abounding in his works:—

(1) Asyndeton, **bella intestīna, caedēs, rapīnae, discordia cīvilis . . . inediae, algōris, vigiliae**, etc., c. 5, ll. 79, 81, 83; cf. c. 14, l. 248; c. 20, l. 396; c. 25, l. 483, and often, even an adversative is omitted, as with **Caepārius**, c. 46, l. 853. The effect is rapidity of movement.

(2) Antithesis, both in the same order (anaphora) and in reverse order (chiasmus), **aliēnī appetēns, suī profūsus** and **satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum**, c. 5, ll. 83, 84; cf. c. 9, l. 166; see note on **quod in bellō**, c. 9, l. 168; etc.

(3) Litotes, **haud absurdum**, c. 3, l. 44, the same combination often; **haud difficulter**, c. 14, l. 259; etc.

(4) One remarkable case of tmesis, **cuius rei lubet**, for **cuiuslubet rei**, c. 5, l. 82.

(5) Alliteration, combined with anaphora, **satis prospera, satisque pollēns**, c. 6, l. 108, extended to etymologica figura, **facinus faceret**, c. 7, l. 140, and often.

(6) Zeugma, c. 51, l. 982, **irae . . . fāmae . . . cōsulātis**.

## VI. A SUMMARY OF SALLUST'S STYLE

The general effect of these peculiarities is pleasing.

1. The variety caused by his archaisms, his colloquialisms, his change of construction, his unusual syntax, makes the favorable impression for which he was constantly striving.

2. A delightful rapidity of movement results from his brevity, which is produced by asyndeton, and a constant avoidance of long or involved sentences.

3. This variety and this rapidity of movement impart a remarkable freshness, which is strongly reënforced by rhetorical effects, especially by antithesis, both anaphoric and chiasitic, and, to a less extent, by litotes and alliteration.







## C. SALLUSTI CRISPI BELLUM CATILINAE

1. Omnīs hominēs, quī sēsē student praestāre cēterīs animālibus, summā ope nītī decet, nē vītā silentiō trāseant velutī pecora, quae nātūra prōna atque ventrī oboedientia finxit. Sed nostra omnis vīs in animō et corpore sita est; animī imperiō, corporis servitiō magis ūtimur; alterum nōbīs 5 cum dīs, alterum cum bēluīs commūne est. Quō mihi rēctius vidētur ingenī quam vīrium opibus glōriam quaerere, et, quoniam vīta ipsa quā fruimur brevis est, memoriā nostrī quam maxumē longam efficere. Nam dīvitiārum et fōrmāe glōria fluxa atque fragilis est, virtūs clāra aeternaque 10 habētur.

Sed diū magnum inter mortālīs certāmen fuit, vīne corporis an virtūte animī rēs militāris magis prōcēderet. Nam et prius quam incipiās cōsultō et ubi cōsulerīs mātūrē factō opus est. Ita utrumque per sē indigēns 15 alterum alteriūs auxiliō eget.

2. Igitur initiō rēgēs (nam in terrīs nōmen imperī id prīmum fuit) dīvorsī, pars ingenium, aliī corpus exercēbant; etiam tum vīta hōminum sine cupiditāte agitābātur, sua cuique satis placēbant. Postea vērō quam in Asiā Cȳrus, 20 in Graeciā Lacedaemoniū et Athēniēnsēs coepere urbīs

\* Arabic figures, as 33, refer to the syntactical appendix; those beginning with the Roman figure, as V3(3), refer to the introduction.

Ch. 1 : 3, ventrī, 33; 5, animī, 46; 5, corporis, 47; 8, nostrī, 48; 12, vīne, 78; 14, cōsultō, 72; 15, per sē, 29. Ch. 2 : 17, igitur, V3(3), 97; 17, imperī, 44; 18, dīvorsī, V1(4); 20, cuique, 93.

atque nātiōnēs subigere, lubīdinem dominandī causam bellī habēre, maxumam glōriam in maxumō imperiō putāre, tum dēnum periculō atque negōtiīs cōmpertum est in bellō  
 25 plūrumum ingenium posse. Quod sī rēgum atque imperātōrum animī virtūs in pāce ita ut in bellō valēret, aequābilis atque cōstantius sēsē rēs hūmānae habērent, neque aliud aliō ferrī neque mūtārī ac miscērī omnia cernerēs. Nam imperium facile eīs artibus retinētur, quibus initio  
 30 partum est. Vērū ubi prō labōre dēsidia, prō continentia et aequitate lubidō atque superbia invāsere, fortūna simul cum mōribus immūtātur. Ita imperium semper ad optimum quemque ā minus bonō trānsfertur.

Quae hominēs arant, nāvigant, aedificant, virtūtī omnia  
 35 pārent. Sed multī mortālēs, dēditī ventrī atque somnō, indoctī incultīque vītā sicutī peregrināntēs trānsiēre; quibus profectō contrā nātūrā corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit. Eōrum ego vītā mortemque iūxtā aestumō, quoniam dē utrāque silētur. Vērū enim vērō is dēnum mihi vīvere  
 40 atque fruī animā vidētur, quī aliquō negōtiō intentus praeclārī facinoris aut artis bonae fāmā quaerit. Sed in magnā cōpiā rērum aliud aliī nātūra iter ostendit.

3. Pulchrum est bene facere reī publicae, etiam bene dīcere haud absurdum est; vel pāce vel bellō clārū fierī  
 45 licet; et quī fēcēre et quī facta aliōrum scrīpsēre, multī laudantur. Ac mihi quidem, tametsī haudquāquam pār glōria sequitur scrīptōrem et āctōrem rērum, tamen in primīs arduum vidētur rēs gestās scrībere: prīmum quod facta dictīs exaequanda sunt; dehinc quia plērīque quae  
 50 dēlīcta reprehenderīs malivolentiā et invidiā dicta putant,

Ch. 2 : 22, dominandī, 180 ; 25, plūrumum, 13 ; 25, quod sī, 102 ; 33, optimum quemque, 92 ; 37, corpus . . . onerī, 187, V4(2) ; 40, negōtiō, V3(4), 43. Ch. 3 : 43, facere, 161 ; 44, absurdum, 189, V4(3) ; 46, tametsī . . . sequitur, V3(5), 124 ; 48, gestās, 176 ; 49, dictīs, 40.

ubi dē magnā virtūte atque glōriā bonōrum memorēs, quae sibi quisque facilia factū putat, aequō animō accipit, suprā ea velutī fīcta prō falsīs dūcit.

Sed ego adulēscētulus initiō sicutī plērīque studiō ad rem pūblicam lātus sum, ibique mihi multa adyorsa fuēre. 55 Nam prō pudōre, prō abstinētiā, prō virtūte, audācia, largitīō, avāritia vigēbant. Quae tametsī animus aspernābātur īsolēns malārum artium, tamen inter tanta vitia imbēcilla aetās ambitīōne corrupta tenēbātur; ac mē, cum ab reliquōrum malīs mōribus dissentīrem, nihilō minus honōris 60 cupīdō eādem quā cēterōs fāmā atque invidiā vēxābat.

4. Igitur ubi animus ex multīs miserīs atque periculis requiēvit et mihi reliquam aetātem ā rē pūblicā procul habendam dēcrēvī, nōn fuit cōsiliū sōcordiā atque dēsidiā bonum ōtium conterere, neque vērō agrum colundō 65 aut vēnandō, servilibus officiīs, intentum aetātem agere, sed ā quō inceptō studiōque mē ambitīō mala dētīnuerat, eōdem regressus statui rēs gestās populī Rōmānī carptim, ut quaeque memoriā dīgna vidēbantur, perscribere, eō magis quod mihi ā spē, metū, partibus rei pūblīcae animus liber 70 erat.

Igitur dē Catilīnae coniūrātiōne quam vērissimē poterō paucīs absolvam; nam id facinus in primīs ego memorābile existumō sceleris atque periculī novitāte. Dē cuius hominis mōribus pauca prius explānanda sunt quam initium 75 nārrandī faciam.

5. L. Catilīna, nōbilī genere nātus, fuit magnā vī et animī et corporis, sed ingeniō malō prāvōque. Huic ab adulēscētiā bella intestīna, caedēs, rapīnae, discordia civī-

Ch. 3 : 51, virtūte, 68 or 78 ? 52, factū, 185 ; 56, pudōre . . . avāritia, 186, V4(1) ; 57, quae, 101 ; 60, mōribus, 63 ; 60, dissentīrem, 152. Ch. 4 : 63, requiēvit, 109 ; 63, reliquam, 10 ; 65, colundō, V1(5) ; 69, memoriā, 68 ; 72, poterō, 106 ; 76, faciam, 149.

80 lis grāta fuēre, ibique iuventūtem suam exercuit. Corpus  
 patiēns inediae, algōris, vigiliae suprā quam cuiquam crē-  
 dibile est. Animus audāx, subdolus, varius, cuius rei lubet  
 simulātor ac dissimulātor, aliēnī appetēns, suī profūsus,  
 ārdēns in cupiditatibus; satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae pa-  
 85 rum: vāstus animus immoderāta, incrēdibilia, nimis alta  
 semper cupiēbat. Hunc post dominātiōnem L. Sullae  
 lubīdō maxuma invāserat rei pūblīcae capiundae, neque id  
 quibus modīs adsequerētur, dum sibi rēgnū parāret, quic-  
 quam pēnsī habēbat. Agitābātur magis magisque in diēs  
 90 animus ferōx inopiā rei familiāris et cōnscentiā scelerum,  
 quae utraque eīs artibus auxerat, quās suprā memorāvī.  
 Incitābant praetereā corruptī cīvitatīs mōrēs, quōs pessuma  
 ac dīversa inter sē mala, lūxuria atque avāritia, vēxābant.

Rēs ipsa hortārī vidētur, quoniam dē mōribus cīvitatīs  
 95 tempus admonuit, suprā repetere ac paucīs institūta maiō-  
 rum domī militiaeque, quō modō rem pūblicam habuerint  
 quantamque relīquerint, ut paulātim immūtāta ex pulcher-  
 rumā atque optumā pessuma ac flāgitiosissima facta sit,  
 disserere.

100 6. Urbem Rōmam, sicutī ego accēpī, condidēre atque  
 habuēre initiō Trōiānī, quī Aenēā duce profugī sēdibus in-  
 certīs vagābantur, cumque eīs Aborigīnēs, genus hominum  
 agreste, sine lēgibus, sine imperiō, liberum atque solūtum.  
 Hī postquam in ūna moenia convēnēre, disparī genere,  
 105 dissimilī linguā, aliī aliō mōre vīventēs, incrēdibile memo-  
 rātū est quam facile coaluerint; ita brevī multitudō di-  
 spersa atque vaga concōrdiā cīvitas facta erat. Sed post-  
 quam rēs eōrum, cīvibus, mōribus, agrīs aucta, satis prō-

Ch. 5 : 81, inediae, 55 ; 84, satis . . . parum, 187, V4(2) ; 88, parāret, 148 ; 93, inter sē, 24 ; 95, suprā, V2(4)c ; 95, repetere . . . disserere, 162.  
 Ch. 6 : 100, sicutī . . . accēpī, V2(5)e, 104 ; 102, hominum, 44 ; 104, genere, 71 ; 105, aliī aliō, 94 ; 106, ita . . . facta erat, V2(5)f.

spera satisque pollēns vidēbātur, sicutī plēraque mortālium habentur, invidia ex opulentīā orta est. Igitur rēgēs popu- 110  
līque fīnitumī bellō temptāre, paucī ex amīcīs auxiliō esse;  
nam cēterī metū percūlsī ā perīculīs aberant. At Rōmānī  
domī militīaeque intentī festīnāre, parāre, alius alium hor-  
tārī, hostībūs obviā ire, libertātem, patriā, parentīsque  
armīs tegere. Post, ubi perīcula virtūte prōpulerant, sociīs 115  
atque amīcīs auxilia portābant, magisque dandīs quam ac-  
cipiundīs beneficiīs amīcitiās parābant.

Imperium lēgitimum, nōmen imperī rēgium habēbant.  
Dēlēctī, quibūs corpus annīs infirmum, ingenium sapientiā  
validum erat, reī pūblicae cōsultābant; eī vel aetāte vel 120  
cūrae similitūdine patrēs appellābantur. Post, ubi rēgium  
imperium, quod initīō cōnservandae libertātis atque augen-  
dae reī pūblicae fuerat, in superbiam dominātiōnemque sē  
convortit, immūtātō mōre annua imperia bīnōsque impe-  
rātōrēs sibi fēcēre; eō modō minumē posse putābant per 125  
licentiam insolēscere animum hūmānum.

7. Sed eā tempestāte coepēre sē quisque magis extollere  
magisque ingenium in prōmptū habēre. Nam rēgibus bonī  
quam malī suspectiōrēs sunt, semperque eīs aliēna virtūs  
formīdulōsa est. Sed civitās incrēdibile memorātū est 130  
adeptā libertāte quantum brevī crēverit: tanta cupidō glō-  
riae incessoerat. Iam prīmum iuventūs, simul ac bellī pa-  
tiēns erat, in castrīs per labōrem ūsum militīae discēbat,  
magisque in decōrīs armīs et militāribus equīs quam in  
scortīs atque conviviīs lubīdinem habēbant. Igitur tālibus 135  
virīs nōn labōs insolītus, nōn locus ūllus asper aut arduus  
erat, nōn armātus hostis formīdulōsus; virtūs omniā do-  
muerat. Sed glōriae maxumum certāmen inter ipsōs erat:

Ch. 6: 109, vidēbātur, 109; 111, temptāre, V3(8), 166; 111, amīcīs, 80;  
113, intentī, 11; 116, dandīs . . . beneficiīs, 179; 119, quibūs, 35; 122,  
cōnservandae . . . reī pūblicae, 181, V3(9); 125, per licentiam, 28. Ch. 7:  
127, coepēre, 1; 131, adeptā, 173; 136, labōs, V1(2).

sē quisque hostem ferīre, mūrum ascendere, cōspicī, dum  
 140 tāle facinus faceret, properābat; eās dīvitias, eam bonam  
 fāmam magnamque nōbilitātem putābant. Laudis avidī,  
 pecūniae liberālēs erant; glōriam ingentem, dīvitias hone-  
 stās volēbant. Memorāre possem, quibus in locīs maxu-  
 mās hostium cōpiās populus Rōmānus parvā manū fū-  
 145 derit, quās urbīs nātūrā mūnitās pugnandō cēperit, nī ea  
 rēs longius nōs ab inceptō traheret.

8. Sed profectō fortūna in omnī rē dominātur; ea rēs  
 cūctās ex lubīdine magis quam ex vērō celebrat obscurat-  
 que. Athēniēnsium rēs gestae, sicutī ego aestumō, satis  
 150 amplae magnificaeque fuēre, vērū aliquantō minōrēs  
 tamen quam fāmā feruntur. Sed quia prōvērēre ibi scri-  
 ptōrum magna ingenia, per terrārum orbem Athēniēnsium  
 facta prō maxumīs celebrantur. Ita eōrum quī ea fēcēre  
 virtūs tanta habētur, quantum ea verbīs potuēre extollere  
 155 praeclāra ingenia. At populō Rōmānō numquam ea cōpia  
 fuit, quia prūdentissimus quisque maxumē negōtiōsus erat,  
 ingenium nēmō sine corpore exercēbat, optumus quisque  
 facere quam dīcere, sua ab aliīs bene facta laudārī quam  
 ipse aliōrum nārrāre mālēbat.

160 9. Igitur domī militiaeque bonī mōrēs colēbantur; con-  
 cordia maxuma, minuma avāritia erat; iūs bonumque apud  
 eōs nōn lēgibus magis quam nātūrā valēbat. Iūrgia, dis-  
 cordiās, simultātēs cum hostibus exercēbant, cīvēs cum  
 cīvibus dē virtūte certābant; in suppliciīs deōrum magnificī,  
 165 domī parcī, in amīcōs fidēlēs erant. Duābus hīs artibus,  
 audāciā in bellō, ubi pāx ēvēnerat aequitāte, sēque remque  
 pūblicam cūrābant. Quārum rērum ego maxuma docu-

Ch. 7 : 140, eās, 6. Ch. 8 : 150, aliquantō, 75 ; 151, prōvērēre, 117 ;  
 154, quantum, 16 ; 158, laudārī, 169. Ch. 9 : 161, concordia . . . avāritia,  
 V4(2), 187 ; 162, valēbat, 2 ; 162, Iūrgia . . . simultātēs, 186, V4(1) ; 165,  
 in amīcōs, 26 ; 166 and 168, in bellō, 65.

menta haec habeo, quod in bello saepius vindicatum est in eos, qui contra imperium in hostem pugnauerant, quique tardius revocati proelio excesserant, quam qui signa relin- 170  
quere aut pulsī loco cedere ausi erant; in pace vero, quod beneficiis quam metu imperium agitabant et accepta iniuria ignoscere quam persequi malebant.

10. Sed ubi labore atque iustitia res publica crevit, reges magni bello domiti, nationes ferae et populi ingentes vi 175  
subacti, Carthago, aemula imperii Romani, ab stirpe interiit, cuncta maria terraeque patebant, saevire fortuna ac miscere omnia coepit. Qui labores, pericula, dubias atque asperas res facile toleraverant, eis otium, divitiae, optanda alias, oneri miseriaeque fuere. Igitur primo imperii, deinde pe- 180  
cuniae cupidō crevit; ea quasi materiēs omnium malorum fuere. Namque avaritia fidem, probitatem ceterasque artis bonas subvertit; pro his superbiam, crudelitatem, deos neglegere, omnia venalia habere edocuit. Ambitio multos mortalis falsos fieri subegit, aliud clausum in pectore, 185  
aliud in lingua promptum habere, amicitias inimicitiasque non ex re sed ex commodō aestumare, magisque voltum quam ingenium bonum habere. Haec primo paulatim crescere, interdum vindicari; post, ubi contagio quasi pestilentia invasit, civitas immutata, imperium 190  
ex iustissimo atque optimo crudele intolerandumque factum.

11. Sed primo magis ambitio quam avaritia animos hominum exercēbat, quod tamen vitium propius virtutem erat. Nam gloriam, honorem, imperium bonus et ignavos 195  
aeque sibi exoptant; sed ille vera via nititur, huic quia

Ch. 9 : 170, revocati, 177. Ch. 10 : 179, eis . . . oneri, 41 ; 184, neglegere, 21 ; 187, ex re, 68 ; 187-191, aestumare . . . voltum . . . iustissimō . . . optimō, VI(4) ; 189, crescere, 166, V3(8). Ch. 11 : 194, quod, 7 ; 194, virtutem, 27 ; 195, ignavos, VI(1).



bonae artēs dēsunt, dolīs atque fallāciīs contendit. Avāritia pecūniae studium habet, quam nēmō sapiēns concupivit; ea quasi venēnīs malīs imbūta corpus animumque  
 200 virilem effēminat, semper infīnīta, insatiābilis est, neque cōpiā neque inopiā minuitur. Sed postquam L. Sulla, armīs receptā rē pūblicā, bonīs initiīs malōs ēventūs habuit, rapere omnēs, trahere, domum alius, alius agrōs cupere, neque modum neque modestiam victōrēs habēre, foeda  
 205 crūdēliaque in cīvīs facinora facere. Hūc accēdēbat quod L. Sulla exercitum, quem in Asiā ductāverat, quō sibi fidum faceret, contrā mōrem maiōrum lūxuriōsē nimisque liberāliter habuerat. Loca amoena, voluptāria facile in ōtiō ferōcīs mīlitum animōs mollīverant. Ibi primum insuēvit  
 210 exercitus populī Rōmānī amāre, pōtare; sīgna, tabulās pīctās, vāsa caelāta mīrārī; ea prīvātīm et pūblicē rapere, dēlūbra spoliāre, sacra profānaque omnia polluere. Igitur eī mīlitēs, postquam victōriam adeptī sunt, nihil reliquī victīs fēcēre. Quippe secundae rēs sapientium animōs  
 215 fatīgant: nē illī corruptīs mōribus victōriae temperārent.

12. Postquam dīvitiae honōrī esse coepēre et eās glōria, imperium, potentia sequēbātur, hebēscere virtūs, paupertās probrō habērī, innocentia prō malivolentiā dūcī coepit. Igitur ex dīvitīs iuventūtem lūxuria atque avāritia cum  
 220 superbiā invāsere; rapere, cōsūmere; sua parvī pendere, aliēna cupere; pudōrem, pudicitiam, dīvīna atque hūmāna prōmiscua; nihil pēnsī neque moderātī habēre. Operae pretium est, cum domōs atque villās cognōverīs in urbium modum exaedificātās, vīsere templa deōrum, quae nostrī  
 225 maiōrēs, religiōsissimī mortālēs, fēcēre. Vērūm illī dēlūbra deōrum pietāte, domōs suās glōriā decorābant, neque

Ch. 11 : 198, concupivit, 105 ; 202, bonīs initiīs, 79 ; 206, quō . . . faceret, 140, V3(12) ; 210, amāre . . . polluere, 95, 186, V4(1) ; 213, reliquī, 51.  
 Ch. 12 : 220, parvī, 59 ; 223, cognōverīs, 147 ; 224, vīsere, 161.

victīs quicquam praeter iniūriae licentiam ēripiēbant. At hī contrā, ignāvissumī hominēs, per summum scelus omnia ea sociīs adimere, quae fortissumī virī victōrēs reliquerant; proinde quasi iniūriam facere id dēmum esset imperiō ūtī. 230

13. Nam quid ea memorem, quae, nisi eīs quī vidēre, nēmīnī crēdibilia sunt, ā privātīs complūribus subvorsōs montīs, maria cōnstrāta esse? Quibus mihi videntur lūdibriō fuisse divitiae; quippe, quās honestē habēre licēbat, abūtī per turpitūdinem properābant. Sed lubidō 235 stuprī, gāneae cēterīque cultūs nōn minor incesserat: virī muliebria patī, mulierēs pudicitiam in prōpatulō habēre; vescendī causā terrā marīque omnia exquīrere; dormīre prius quam somnī cupidō esset; nōn famem aut sitim, neque frīgus neque lassitūdinem opperīrī, sed ea omnia 240 lūxū antecapere. Haec iuventūtem, ubi familiārēs opēs dēfēceraut, ad facinora incendēbant; animus imbūtus malīs artibus haud facile lubīdinibus carēbat; eō profūsus omnibus modīs quaestuī atque sūmptuī dēditus erat.

14. In tantā tamque corruptā civitāte Catilīna, id quod 245 factū facillumum erat, omnium flāgitiōrum atque facinorum circum sē tamquam stīpātōrum catervās habēbat. Nam quicumque impudīcus, adulter, gāneō, manū, ventre, pēne, bona patria lacerāverat, quīque aliēnum aes grande cōnflāverat, quō flāgitium aut facinus redimeret, praetereā 250 omnēs undique parricidae, sacrilegī, convictī iūdiciīs aut prō factīs iūdiciū timentēs, ad hōc quōs manus atque lingua periūriō aut sanguine cīvili alēbat, postrēmō omnēs quōs flāgitium, egestās, cōnsciūs animus exagitābat, ei Catilīnae proxumī familiārēsque erant. Quod sī quis etiam 255

Ch. 12 : 227, victīs, 32 ; 230, esset, 155 ; 230, ūtī, 163. Ch. 13 : 231, memorem, 134 ; 238, terrā marīque, 62 ; 241, lūxū, 72 ; 243, lubīdinibus, 77. Ch. 14 : 249, lacerāverat, 125 ; 252, ad hōc, V2(5)h ; 255, quod sī, 102 ; 255, quis, 90.

ā culpā vacuus in amicitiam eius inciderat, cotidiānō ūsū atque illecebrīs facile pār similisque cēterīs efficiēbātur. Sed maxumē adulēscēntium familiāritātēs appetēbat: eōrum animī mollēs etiam et fluxī dolīs haud difficulter  
 260 capiēbantur. Nam ut cuiusque studium ex aetāte flagrābat, aliīs scorta praeberē, aliīs canēs atque equōs mercārī, postrēmō neque sūmptuī neque modestiae suae parcere, dum illōs obnoxios fidōsque sibi faceret. Sciō fuisse nōn nullōs, quī ita exīstumārent, iuventūtem, quae domum  
 265 Catilīnae frequentābat, parum honestē pudicitiam habuisse; sed ex aliīs rēbus magis, quam quod cuiquam id compertum foret, haec fāma valēbat.

15. Iam primum adulēscēns Catilina multa nefanda stupra fēcerat, cum virgine nōbili, cum sacerdotē Vestae, alia  
 270 huiusce modī contrā iūs fāsque. Postrēmō captus amōre Aurēliae Orestillae, cuius praeter fōrmam nihil umquam bonus laudāvit, quod ea nūbere illī dubitābat timēns prīvignum adultā aetāte, prō certō crēditur necātō filiō vacuam domum scelestīs nūptiīs fēcisse. Quae quidem rēs  
 275 mihi in primīs vidētur causa fuisse facinus mātūrandī. Namque animus impūrus, dīs hominibusque infēstus, neque vigiliīs neque quiētibus sēdārī poterat; ita cōnscientia mentem excitam vāstābat. Igitur colōs eī exsanguis, foedī oculī, citus modo, modo tardus incessus;  
 280 prōrsus in faciē voltūque vēcordia inerat.

16. Sed iuventūtem, quam, ut suprā dīximus, illexerat, multis modīs mala facinora ēdocēbat. Ex illīs testīs sīgnātōrēsque falsōs commodāre; fidem, fortūnās, perīcula vilia habēre, post, ubi eōrum fāmam atque pudōrem attrī-  
 28 verat, maiōra alia imperābat: sī causa peccandī in prae-sēns minus suppetēbat, nihilō minus īnsontis sicutī sontis

Ch. 14 : 263, dum . . . faceret, 148 ; 265, frequentābat, 127 ; 267, foret, VI(6). Ch. 15 : 270, modī, 49 ; 274, quae . . . rēs, 8 ; 278, colōs, VI(2). Ch. 16 : 286, nihilō, 75.

circumvenire, iugulare: scilicet, ne per otium torpescerent manus aut animus, gratuito potius malus atque crudelis erat.

Eis amicis sociisque confisus Catilina, simul quod aes 290 alienum per omnis terras ingens erat et, quod plerique Sullanum milites, largius suo usi, rapinarum et victoriae veteris memorēs civile bellum exoptabant, opprimundae rei publicae consilium cepit. In Italia nullus exercitus, Cn. Pompeius in extremis terris bellum gerēbat; ipsi consulatum 295 petenti magna spes; senatus nihil sane intentus; tutae tranquillaeque res omnes, sed ea prorsus opportuna Catilinae.

17. Igitur circiter Kalendas Iunias L. Caesare et C. Fingulo consulibus primo singulos appellare, hortari alios, alios 300 temptare; opes suas, imparatam rem publicam, magna praemia coniurationis docere. Ubi satis explorata sunt quae voluit, in unum omnis convocat, quibus maxuma necessitudo et plurimum audaciae inerat. Eo convenire senatorii ordinis P. Lentulus Sura, P. Autronius, L. Cassius Longinus, C. Cethegus, P. et Ser. Sullae Ser. filii, L. Vargunteius, Q. Annius, M. Porcius Laeca, L. Bestia, Q. Curius; praeterea ex equestri ordine M. Fulvius Nobilior, L. Statilius, P. Gabinius Capitolinus, C. Cornelius; ad hoc multi ex coloniis et municipiis, domi nobiles. Erant praeterea 310 complures paulo occultius consilii huiusce participes nobiles, quos magis dominationis spes hortabatur quam inopia aut alia necessitudo. Ceterum iuventus pleraque, sed maxime nobilium Catilinae inceptis favēbat; quibus in otio vel magnifice vel molliter vivere copia erat, incerta pro certis, 315 bellum quam pacem malebant. Fuere item ea tempestate

Ch. 16 : 288, torpescerent, 139 ; 292, rapinarum . . . veteris, 54 ; 293, opprimundae, V1(5) ; 296, nihil, 20. Ch. 17 : 299, Kalendas, 81 ; 303, convocat, 103, V3(14) ; 303, necessitudo, V1(7) ; 313, ceterum, V3(15) ; 313, pleraque, V2(4)f ; 315, vivere, 164 ; 315, incerta . . . pacem, V2(5)j.

quī crēderent M. Licinium Crassum nōn ignārum eius cōn-  
sili fuisse; quia Cn. Pompeius, invīsus ipsī, magnum exer-  
citum ductābat, cuiusvīs opēs voluisse contrā illius poten-  
320 tiam crēscere, simul cōnfisum, sī coniūrātiō valuisset, facile  
apud illōs principem sē fore.

18. Sed antea item coniūrāvēre paucī contrā rem pūbli-  
cam, in quibus Catilīna fuit; de quā quam vērissumē poterō  
dicam. L. Tullō et M'. Lepidō cōsulibus, P. Autrōnius et  
325 P. Sulla dēsīgnātī cōsulēs lēgibus ambitūs interrogātī poe-  
nās dederant. Post paulō Catilīna pecūniārum repetun-  
dārum reus prohibitus erat cōsulātum petere, quod intrā  
lēgitimōs diēs profitērī nequiverat. Erat eōdem tempore  
Cn. Pisō, adulēscēns nōbilis, summae audāciae, egēns, fac-  
330 tiōsus, quem ad perturbandam rem pūblicam inopia atque  
malī mōrēs stimulābant. Cum hōc Catilīna et Autrōnius  
circiter Nōnās Decembrīs cōsiliō commūnicātō parābant  
in Capitoliō Kalendīs Iānuāriīs L. Cottam et L. Torquā-  
tum cōsulēs interficere, ipsī fascibus correptīs Pisōnem  
335 cum exercitū ad obtinendās duās Hispāniās mittere. Eā  
rē cognitā, rūsus in Nōnās Februāriās cōnsilium caedis  
trānstulerant. Iam tum nōn cōsulibus modo, sed plē-  
rīsque senātōribus perniciem māchinābantur. Quod nī  
Catilīna mātūrāsset prō cūriā sīgnum sociīs dare, eō diē  
340 post conditam urbem Rōmam pessimum facinus patrātum  
foret. Quia nōndum frequentēs armātī convēnerant, ea  
rēs cōnsilium dirēmit.

19. Postea Pisō in citeriōrem Hispāniā quaestor prō  
praetōre missus est adnītente Crassō, quod eum infēstum  
345 inimicum Cn. Pompeiō cognōverat. Neque tamen senātus  
prōvinciam invītus dederat; quippe foedum hominem ā rē

Ch. 17 : 317, crēderent, 157; 320, valuisset, 159. Ch. 18 : 325, ambitūs,  
58; 327, petere, 165; 330, ad perturbandam rem pūblicam, 182; 339,  
mātūrāsset, 154; 341, foret, VI(6). Ch. 19 : 346, invītus, 11.

pūblicā procul esse volēbat, simul quia bonī complūrēs praesidium in eō putābant, et iam tum potentia Pompeī formīdulōsa erat. Sed is Pīsō in prōvinciā ab equitibus Hispānīs, quōs in exercitū ductābat, iter faciēns occīsus 350 est. Sunt quī ita dīcant, imperia eius iniūsta, superba, crūdēlia barbarōs nequīvisse patī; aliī autem, equitēs illōs, Cn. Pompeī veterēs fidōsque clientīs, voluntāte eius Pīsō-nem aggressōs; numquam Hispānōs praetereā tāle facinus fēcisse, sed imperia saeva multa anteā perpressōs. Nōs 355 eam rem in mediō relinquēmus. Dē superiōre coniūrā-tiōne satis dictum.

20. Catilīna, ubi eōs, quōs paulō ante memorāvī, con-vēnisse videt, tametsī cum singulīs multa saepe ēgerat, tamen in rem fore crēdēns ūnivorsōs appellāre et cohortārī, 360 in abditam partem aedium sēcēdit atque ibi omnibus arbi-trīs procul āmōtīs ōrātiōnem huiusce modī habuit:

“Nī virtūs fidēsque vostra spectāta mihi forent, nēquī-quam opportūna rēs cecidisset; spēs magna, dominātiō in manibus frūstrā fuissent; neque ego per ignāviam aut vāna 365 ingenia incerta prō certīs captārem. Sed quia multis et magnīs tempestātibus vōs cognōvī fortīs fidōsque mihi, eō animus ausus est maxumum atque pulcherrumum facinus incipere, simul quia vōbīs eadem quae mihi bona malaque esse intellēxī; nam idem velle atque idem nōlle, ea dēmum 370 firma amīcītia est.

Sed ego quae mente agitāvī, omnēs iam anteā dīvorsī audīstis. Cēterum mihi in diēs magis animus accenditur, cum cōnsīderō, quae condiciō vītae futūra sit, nisi nōsmet ipsī vindicāmus in lībertātem. Nam postquam rēs pūblica 375 in paucōrum potentium iūs atque diciōnem concessit,

Ch. 19 : 349, erat, 117 ; 350, ductābat, V2(2) ; 355, nōs, 82. Ch. 20 : 359, ēgerat, 124 ; 360, appellāre . . . cohortārī, 161 ; 363, spectāta, 5 ; 373, cēterum, V3(15) ; 373, mihi, 37 ; 374, cōnsīderō, 120 ; 374, nisi, 98.

semper illīs rēgēs, tetrarchae vectīgālēs esse, populī, nā-  
 tiōnēs stīpendia pendere; cēterī omnēs, strēnuī, bonī,  
 nōbilēs atque ignōbilēs, volgus fuimus, sine grātiā, sine  
 380 auctōritāte, eīs obnoxii, quibus, sī rēs pūblica valēret, for-  
 mīdinī essēmus. Itaque omnis grātiā, potentia, honōs,  
 dīvitiae apud illōs sunt aut ubi illī volunt; nōbīs reliquēre  
 perīcula, repulsās, iūdicia, egestātem. Quae quō ūsque  
 tandem patiēminī, o fortissimī virī? Nōnne ēmorī per vir-  
 385 tūtem praestat quam vītā miseram atque inhonestam,  
 ubi aliēnae superbiae lūdibriō fuerīs, per dēdecus amittere?  
 Vērū enim vērō, prō deum atque hominum fidem, victōria  
 in manū nōbīs est; viget aetās, animus valet; contrā illīs  
 annīs atque dīvitīs omnia cōsensuērunt. Tantum modo  
 390 inceptō opus est, cētera rēs expedit. Etenim quis mortā-  
 lium, cui virīle ingenium est, tolerāre potest illīs dīvitās  
 superāre, quās profundant in exstruendō marī et montibus  
 coaequandīs, nōbīs rem familiārem etiā ad necessariā  
 deesse? Illōs bīnās aut amplius domōs continuāre, nōbīs  
 395 larem familiārem nūsquam ūllum esse? Cum tabulās,  
 signa, toreumata emunt, nova dīruunt, alia aedificant, po-  
 strēmō omnibus modīs pecūniā trahunt, vexant, tamen  
 summā lubīdine dīvitās suās vincere nequeunt. At nōbīs  
 est domī inopia, forīs aes aliēnum; mala rēs, spēs multō  
 400 asperior; dēnique quid reliquī habēmus praeter miseram  
 animam?

Quīn igitur expergīsciminī? Ēn illa, illa quam saepe  
 optāstis, libertās, praetereā dīvitiae, decus, glōria in oculis  
 sita sunt; fortūna omnia ea victōribus praemia posuit.  
 405 Rēs, tempus, perīcula, egestās, bellī spolia magnifica magis  
 quam ōrātiō mea vōs hortantur. Vel imperātōre vel milite

Ch. 20: 381, grātiā . . . egestātem, 186, V4(1); 383, quae, 101; 386,  
 fuerīs, 147; 387, prō . . . fidem, 23; 390, inceptō, 72; 390, cētera, 12;  
 392, profundant, 156; 400, reliquī, 51.

mē ūtiminī; neque animus neque corpus ā vōbīs aberit. Haec ipsa, ut spērō, vōbīscum ūnā cōnsul agam, nisi forte mē animus fallit et vōs servīre magis quam imperāre parātī estis.”

410

**21.** Postquam accēpēre ea hominēs, quibus mala abundē omnia erant, sed neque rēs neque spēs bona ūlla, tametsī illis quiēta movēre magna mercēs vidēbātur, tamen postulāvēre plērīque, ut prōpōneret, quae condiciō bellī foret, quae praemia armīs peterent, quid ubīque opis aut speī<sup>415</sup> habērent. Tum Catilīna pollicērī tabulās novās, prōscripciōnem locuplētium, magistrātūs, sacerdotia, rapīnās, alia omnia, quae bellum atque lubīdō victōrum fert. Praetereā esse in Hispāniā citeriōre Pisōnem, in Maurētāniā cum exercitū P. Sittium Nūcerinum, cōsiliī suī participēs;<sup>420</sup> petere cōsulātum C. Antōnium, quem sibi collēgam fore spērāret, hominem et familiārem et omnibus necessitudinibus circumventum; cum eō sē cōnsulem initium agundī factūrum. Ad hōc maledictīs increpābat omnīs bonōs, suōrum ūnum quemque nōmināns laudāre: admonēbat<sup>425</sup> alium egestātis, alium cupiditātis suae, complūrīs periculī aut ignōminiae, multōs victōriae Sullānae, quibus ea praedae fuerat. Postquam omnium animōs alacrīs videt, cohortātus ut petitiōnem suam cūrae habērent, conventum dīmīsīt.

**22.** Fuēre eā tempestāte quī dicerent Catilīnam, ōrātiōne<sup>430</sup> habitā, cum ad iūs iūrandum populārīs sceleris suī adigeret, hūmānī corporis sanguinem vīnō permixtum in paterīs circumtulisse; inde cum post exsecrātiōnem omnēs dēgustāvissent, sicutī in sollemnibus sacris fierī cōsuēvit, aperuisse cōsiliū suum, atque eō dictitāre fēcisse, quō inter sē fidī<sup>435</sup> magis forent, alius aliī tantī facinoris cōsciū. Nōn nullī

Ch. 20 : 407, mē, 72. Ch. 21 : 411, accēpēre, V2(1); 413, quiēta, 12; 413, movēre, 161; 414, foret, 137, V1(6); 415, opis, 51; 418, fert, 3; 426, egestātis, 56; 429, habērent, 141. Ch. 22 : 431, adigeret, 150.



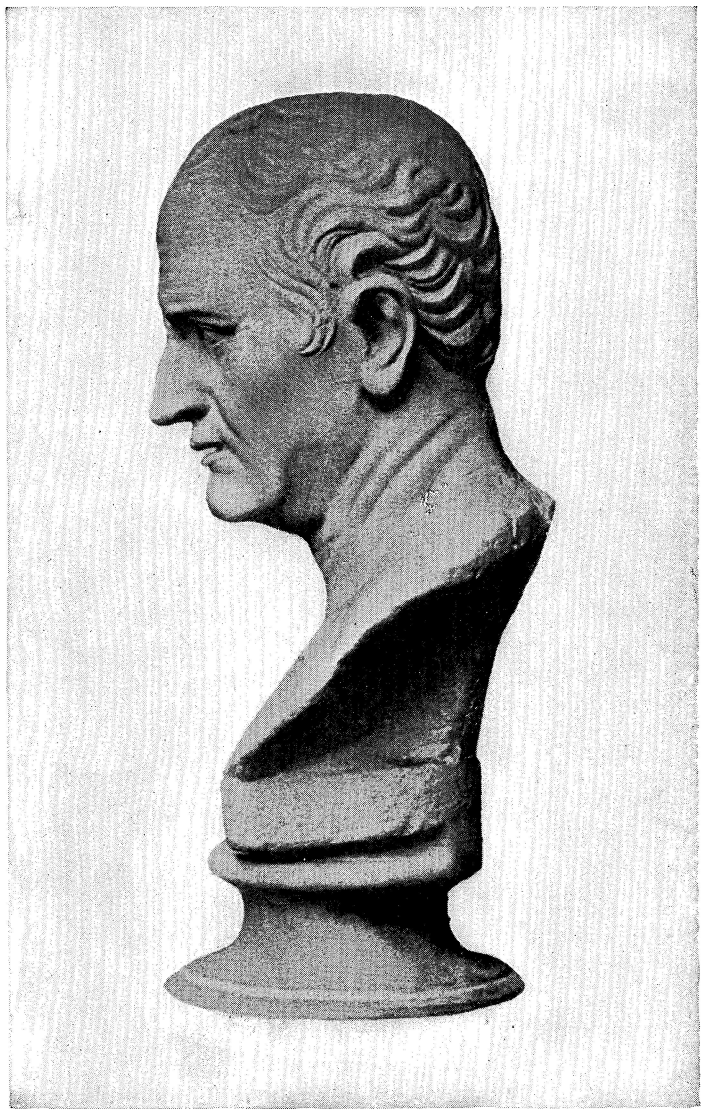
ficta et haec et multa praetereā existumābant ab eīs, quī Cicerōnis invidiam, quae posteā orta est, lēnīrī crēdēbant atrōcitate sceleris eōrum, quī poenās dederant. Nōbīs ea  
440 rēs prō magnitūdine parum comperta est.

23. Sed in eā coniūrātiōne fuit Q. Cūrius, nātus haud obscurō locō, flāgitiīs atque facinoribus cōpertus, quem cēnsōrēs senātū probri grātiā mōverant. Huic hominī nōn minor vānitās inerat quam audācia; neque reticēre quae  
445 audierat, neque suamet ipse scelera occultāre, prōrsus neque dicere neque facere quicquam pēnsī habēbat. Erat ei cum Fulviā, muliere nōbilī, stupri vetus cōsuētūdō: cui cum minus grātus esset, quia inopiā minus largiri poterat, repente glōriāns maria montisque pollicērī coepit  
450 et minārī interdum ferrō, nī sibi obnoxia foret, postrēmō ferocius agitāre quam solitus erat. At Fulvia insolentiae Cūri causā cognitā tāle periculum rei pūblīcae haud occultum habuit, sed sublātō auctōre dē Catilīnae coniūrātiōne quae quōque modō audierat complūribus nārrāvit.

455 Ea rēs in primīs studia hominum accendit ad cōsulātum mandandum M. Tullio Cicerōnī. Namque antea plēraque nōbilitās invidiā aestuābat, et quasi pollui cōsulātum crēdebant, sī eum quamvis ēgregius homō novos adeptus foret. Sed ubi periculum advēnit, invidia atque superbia post fuēre.

460 24. Igitur, comitiīs habitis, cōsulēs dēclārantur M. Tullius et C. Antōnius. Quod factum primō populārīs coniūrātiōnis concusserat. Neque tamen Catilīnae furor minuēbātur, sed in diēs plūrā agitāre, arma per Italiam locis opportūnis parāre, pecūniam suā aut amicōrum fidē  
465 sūmptam mūtuum Faesulās ad Mānlium quendam portāre,

Ch. 22 : 438, orta est, 127 ; 439, nōbīs, 39. Ch. 23 : 441, haud obscurō, 183, V4(3) ; 442, locō, 66 ; 443, probri, 53 ; 444, reticēre . . . occultāre . . . dicere . . . facere, 22 ; 452, occultum, 171 ; 458, novos, VI(1). Ch. 24 : 460, igitur, 97, V3(3) ; 461, factum, 9 ; 464, locis, 62.



## CICERO

From a bust in the Royal Gallery at Madrid.



quī postea princeps fuit bellī faciundī. Eā tempestāte plūrumōs cuiusque generis hominēs adscīvisse sibi dīcitur, mulierēs etiam aliquot, quae prīmō ingentīs sūmptūs stuprō corporis tolerāverant, post, ubi aetās tantum modo quaestui neque lūxuriae modum fēcerat, aes aliēnum grande cōn-<sup>470</sup> flāverant. Per eās sē Catilīna crēdēbat posse servitia urbāna sollicitāre, urbem incendere, virōs eārum vel adiungere sibi vel interficere.

**25.** Sed in eis erat Semprōnia, quae multa saepe virilis audāciae facinora commiserat. Haec mulier genere atque<sup>475</sup> fōrmā, praeterea virō atque liberīs satis fortunāta fuit; litterīs Graecīs et Latīnīs docta, psallere et saltāre ēlegantius quam necesse est probae, multa alia, quae instrūmenta lūxuriae sunt. Sed ei cārīōra semper omnia quam decus atque pudicitia fuit; pecūniae an fāmae minus parceret,<sup>480</sup> haud facile discernērēs; lubidō sīc accēnsa ut saepius peteret virōs quam peterētur. Sed ea saepe antehāc fidem prōdiderat, crēditum abiūrāverat, caedis cōnschia fuerat; lūxuriā atque inopiā praeceps abierat. Vērū ingenium eius haud absurdum; posse vorsūs facere, iocum movēre,<sup>485</sup> sermōne ūtī vel modestō vel mollī vel procācī; prōrsus multae facētiaē multusque lepōs inerat.

**26.** Hīs rēbus comparātis, Catilīna nihilō minus in pro-  
ximum annum cōsulātum petēbat, spērāns, sī dēsīgnātus foret, facile sē ex voluntāte Antōniō ūsūrum. Neque in-<sup>490</sup> terea quiētus erat, sed omnibus modīs insidiās parābat Cicerōnī. Neque illi tamen ad cavendum dolus aut astū-  
tiaē deerant. Namque ā principiō cōsulātūs suī multa pollicendō per Fulviam effēcerat, ut Q. Cūrius, dē quō paulō ante memorāvī, cōnsilia Catilīnae sibi prōderet. Ad<sup>495</sup>

Ch. 24 : 471, per eās, 29. Ch. 25 : 475, facinora, 15 ; 477, litterīs . . . docta . . . psallere . . . alia, V3(17); 480, fuit, 3 ; 482, ea, 85. Ch. 26 : 492, illi, 36 ; 493, multa, 13 ; 495, prōderet, 145.

hōc collēgam suum Antōnium pactiōne prōvinciae perpu-  
 lerat, nē contrā rem pūblicam sentīret; circum sē praesidia  
 amīcōrum atque clientium occultē habēbat. Postquam diēs  
 comitiōrum vēnit et Catilīnae neque petitiō neque īnsidiae,  
 500 quās cōsulibus in campō fēcerat, prōsperē cessēre, cōn-  
 stituit bellum facere et extrēma omnia experīrī, quoniam  
 quae occultē temptāverat, aspera foedaque ēvēnerant.

27. Igitur C. Mānlium Faesulās atque in eam partem  
 Etrūriae, Septimium quendam Camertem in agrum Pīcē-  
 505 num, C. Iūlium in Apūliam dīmisit, praetereā alium aliō,  
 quem ubīque opportūnum sibi fore crēdēbat. Intereā Rō-  
 mae multa simul mōlīrī: cōsulibus īnsidiās tendere, parāre  
 incendia, opportūna loca armātīs hominibus obsidēre; ipse  
 cum tēlō esse, item aliōs iubēre, hortārī utī semper intentī  
 510 parātique essent; diēs noctisque festīnāre, vigilāre, neque  
 īnsomniīs neque labōre fatīgārī. Postrēmō, ubi multa agi-  
 tantī nihil prōcēdit, rūsus intempestā nocte coniūrātiōnis  
 prīncipēs convocat per M. Porcium Laecam, ibique multa  
 dē ignāviā eōrum questus docet, sē Mānlium praemīsisse ad  
 515 eam multitūdinem, quam ad capiunda arma parāverat, item  
 aliōs in alia loca opportūna, quī initium bellī facerent, sēque  
 ad exercitum proficīscī cupere, sī prius Cicerōnem oppres-  
 sisset; eum suīs cōsiliīs multum officere.

28. Igitur perterritīs ac dubitantibus cēterīs C. Cornēlius  
 520 eques Rōmānus operam suam pollicitus et cum eō L. Var-  
 gunteius senātor cōstituēre eā nocte paulō post cum ar-  
 mātīs hominibus sicutī salūtātum introīre ad Cicerōnem ac  
 dē imprōvisō domī suae imparātum cōnfodere. Cūrius ubi  
 intellegit quantum perīculum cōsulī impendeat, properē

Ch. 27 : 503, Faesulās, 19 ; 504, quendam, 88 ; 506, quem . . . fore, 167 ; 511, agitanti, 37 ; 513, convocat, 103 ; 517, proficīscī, 162 ; 516, face-  
 rent . . . oppressisset, 111 ; 518, cōsiliīs, 34. Ch. 28 : 522, salūtātum, 184 ;  
 524, intellegit . . . impendeat, 109, 111.

per Fulviam Cicerōnī dolum quī parābātur ēnūntiat. Ita 525 illi iānuā prohibitī tantum facinus frūstrā suscēperant.

Intereā Mānlius in Etrūriā plēbem sollicitāre, egestāte simul ac dolōre iniuriae novārum rērum cupidam, quod Sullae dominātiōne agrōs bonaque omnia amiserat; prae-  
tereā latrōnēs cuiusque generis, quōrum in eā regiōne 530 magna cōpia erat; nōn nullōs ex Sullānīs colōniīs, quibus lubidō atque lūxuria ex magnīs rapīnīs nihil reliquī fēcerat.

29. Ea cum Cicerōnī nūntiārentur, ancipitī malō permō-  
tus, quod neque urbem ab insidiīs privātō cōsiliō longius  
tuērī poterat neque, exercitus Mānli quantū aut quō cōn- 535  
siliō foret, satis compertum habēbat, rem ad senātum refert  
iam antea volgī rūmōribus exagitātā. Itaque, quod plē-  
rumque in atrōcī negōtiō solet, senātus decrēvit, darent  
operam cōsulēs, nē quid rēs pūblica dētrimentī caperet.  
Ea potestās per senātum mōre Rōmānō magistrātui ma- 540  
xuma permittitur exercitum parāre, bellum gerere, coercēre  
omnibūs modīs sociōs atque civīs, domī militiaeque impe-  
rium atque iūdicium summum habēre; aliter sine populī  
iussū nullius eārum rērum cōsulī iūs est.

30. Post paucōs diēs L. Saenius senātor in senātū lit- 545  
terās recitāvit, quās Faesulīs allātās sibi dicēbat, in quibus  
scriptum erat C. Mānlium arma cēpisse cum magnā multi-  
tūdine ante diem VI Kalendās Novembrīs. Simul, id quod  
in tālī rē solet, aliī portenta atque prōdigia nūntiābant, aliī  
conventūs fierī, arma portārī, Capuae atque in Apūliā 550  
servile bellum movērī. Igitur senātī dēcrētō Q. Mārcius  
Rēx Faesulās, Q. Metellus Crēticus in Apūliam circumque  
ea loca missī (eī utrīque ad urbem imperātōrēs erant, im-  
pedītī, nē triumphārent calumniā paucōrum, quibus omnia

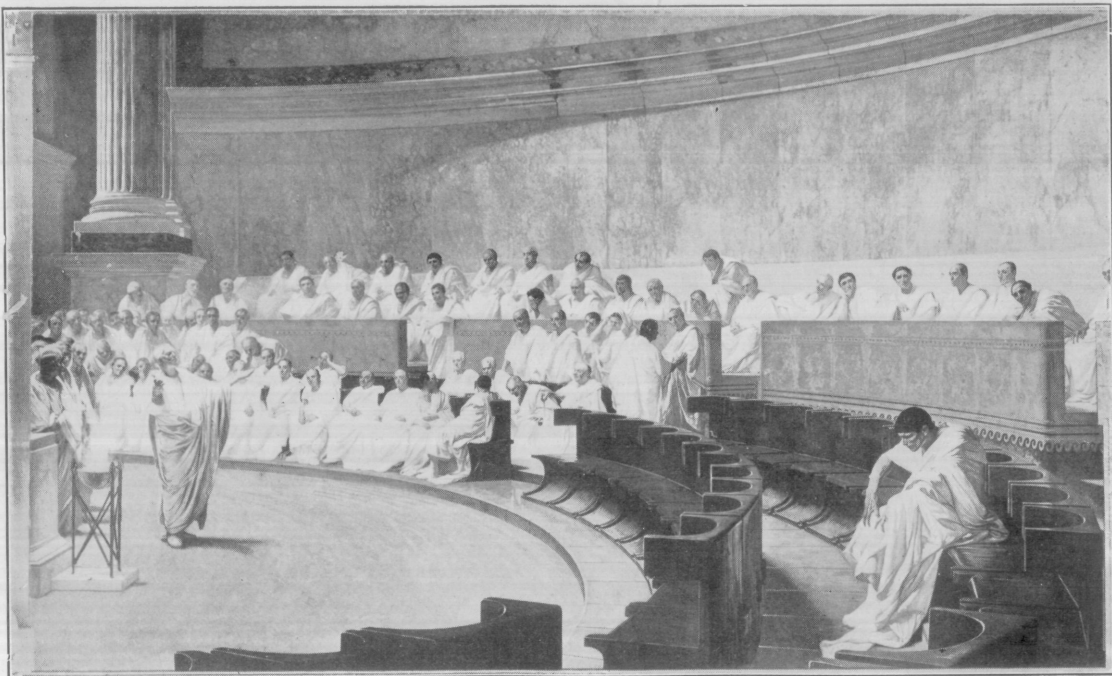
Ch. 29 : 533, nūntiārentur, 150 ; 534, longius, V2(4)g ; 536, foret, 137, V1(6) ; 536, compertum, 171. Ch. 30 : 545, diēs, 18 ; 548, id quod, 8 ; 551, senātī, V1(3) ; 554, triumphārent, 142.

555 honesta atque inhonesta vĕndere mōs erat), sed praetōrēs  
 Q. Pompeius Rūfus Capuam, Q. Metellus Celer in agrum  
 Pīcēnum, eisque permissum utī prō tempore atque periculō  
 exercitum comparārent. Ad hōc, sī quis indicāvisset dē  
 coniūrātiōne, quae contrā rem pūblicam facta erat, prae-  
 560 mium servō lībertātem et sēstertia centum, līberō impūnitā-  
 tem eius reī et sēstertia ducenta, itemque dēcrēvĕre utī  
 gladiātōriāe familiae Capuam et in cētera mūnicipia dis-  
 tribuerentur prō cuiusque opibus, Rōmae per tōtam urbem  
 vigiliae habērentur eisque minōrēs magistrātūs praeessent.

565 **31.** Quibus rēbus permōta civitās atque immūtāta urbis  
 faciēs erat. Ex summā laetitiā atque lascīviā, quae diū-  
 turna quiēs pepererat, repente omnīs trīstitia invāsīt;  
 festīnāre, trepidāre, neque locō neque hominī cuiquam satis  
 crēdere, neque bellum gerere, neque pācem habēre, suō  
 570 quisque metū perīcula mētiri. Ad hōc mulierēs, quibus  
 reī pūblīcae magnitudīne bellī timor īnsolitus incesserat,  
 afflictāre sēsē, manūs supplicēs ad caelum tendere, mise-  
 rārī parvōs līberōs, rogītāre omnia, *omnia* pavĕre, superbiā  
 atque dēliciīs omissīs sibi patriaeque diffīdere.

575 At Catilīnae crūdēlis animus eadem illa movēbat, tametsī  
 praesidia parābantur et ipse lēge Plautiā interrogātus erat  
 ab L. Paulō. Postrēmō dissimulandī causā aut suī expūr-  
 gandī, sicut iūrgiō lacessītus foret, in senātum vēnit. Tum  
 M. Tullius cōsul, sīve praesentiam eius timēns sīve irā  
 580 commōtus, ōrātiōnem habuit lūculentam atque ūtilem reī  
 pūblīcae, quam postea scriptam ēdidit. Sed ubi ille adsē-  
 dit, Catilīna, ut erat parātus, ad dissimulanda omnia, dē-  
 missō voltū, vōce supplicī postulāre ā patribus coepit, nē

Ch. 30 : 558, comparārent, 145. Ch. 31 : 568, locō . . . hominī, 33 ;  
 568, cuiquam, 91 ; 569, suō quisque, 93 ; 571, reī pūblīcae, 47 ; 573, rogi-  
 tāre, V2(2) ; 575, tametsī, V3(5) ; 576, parābantur, 124 ; 577, dissimulandī,  
 181 ; 581, scriptam, 178.



CICERO ADDRESSING THE SENATE.  
"Quid, quod adventu tuo ista subsellia vacuefacta sunt?"





quid dē sē temere crēderent; eā familiā ortum, ita sē ab adulēscientiā vītam īstituisse, ut omnia bona in spē habē- 585 ret; nē exīstumārent sibi, patriciō hominī, cuius ipsiūs atque maiōrum plūruma beneficia in plēbem Rōmānam essent, perditā rē pūblicā opus esse, cum eam servāret M. Tullius, inquilīnus cīvis urbis Rōmae. Ad hōc male dicta alia cum adderet, obstrepere omnēs, hostem atque parricīdam vocāre. 590 Tum ille furibundus, “quoniam quidem circumventus,” inquit, “ab inimīcīs praeceps agor, incendium meum ruīnā restinguam.”

**32.** Deinde sē ex cūriā domum prōripuit. Ibi multa ipse sēcum volvēns, quod neque īnsidiae cōsulī prōcēdēbant et 595 ab incendiō intellegēbat urbem vigiliīs mūnītā, optimum factū crēdēns exercitum augēre ac, prius quam legiōnēs scriberentur, multa antecapere, quae bellō ūsuī forent, nocte intempestā cum paucīs in Mānliāna castra profectus est. Sed Cethēgō atque Lentulō cēterisque, quōrum co- 600 gnōverat prōmptam audāciam, mandat, quibus rēbus possent, opēs factiōnis cōfirment, īnsidiās cōsulī mātūrent, caedem, incendia aliaque bellī facinora parent: sēsē prope diem cum magnō exercitū ad urbem accessūrum.

**33.** Dum haec Rōmae geruntur, C. Mānlius ex suō 605 numerō lēgātōs ad Mārcium Rēgem mittit cum mandātīs huiusce modī:

“Deōs hominēsque testāmur, imperātor, nōs arma neque contrā patriam cēpisse neque quō perīculum aliīs facerēmus, sed utī corpora nostra ab iniūriā tūta forent, quī, 610 miserī, egentēs, violentiā atque crūdēlitāte faenerātōrum plērique patriae, sed omnēs fāmā atque fortūnīs expertēs

Ch. 31: 585, habēret, 144; 586, sibi . . . rē pūblicā, 72. Ch. 32: 596, optimum, 167, VI(4); 597, augēre . . . antecapere, 161; 598, bellō ūsuī, 41; 601, possent . . . cōfirment . . . mātūrent . . . parent, 159, 111; 603, diem, 27. Ch. 33: 605, geruntur, 118; 610, quī, 7; 611, violentiā . . . crūdēlitāte, 78.

sumus: neque cuiquam nostrum licuit mōre maiōrum lēge  
 ūtī neque āmissō patrimōniō liberum corpus habēre; tanta  
 615 saevitia faenerātōrum atque praetōris fuit. Saepe maiōrēs  
 vostrum miseritī plēbis Rōmānae dēcrētīs suīs inopiae  
 eius opitulātī sunt, ac novissumē memoriā nostrā propter  
 magnitudinem aeris aliēnī, volentibus omnibus bonīs,  
 argentum aere solūtum est. Saepe ipsa plēbs, aut domi-  
 620 nandī studiō permōta aut superbiā magistrātuum, armāta  
 ā patribus sēcēssit. At nōs nōn imperium neque dīvitias  
 petimus, quārum rērum causā bella atque certāmina omnia  
 inter mortālīs sunt, sed libertātem, quam nēmō bonus nisi  
 cum animā simul āmittit. Tē atque senātum obtestāmur,  
 625 cōsulātis miserīs cīvibus, lēgis praesidium, quod inīquitās  
 praetōris ēripuit, restituātis, nēve nōbīs eam necessitudi-  
 nem impōnātis, ut quaerāmus, quōnam modō maxumē ultī  
 sanguinem nostrum pereāmus.”

**34.** Ad haec Q. Mārcius respondit: sī quid ab senātū  
 630 petere vellent, ab armīs discēdant, Rōmam supplicēs pro-  
 ficiscantur; eā mānsuētūdine atque misericordiā senātum  
 populī Rōmānī semper fuisse, ut nēmō umquam ab eō  
 frūstrā auxilium petīverit.

At Catilīna ex itinere plērisque cōsulāribus, praetereā  
 635 optumō cuique litterās mittit, sē falsīs crīminibus circum-  
 ventum, quoniam factiōnī inimicōrum resistere nequiverit,  
 fortunae cēdere, Massiliam in exsilium proficiscī, nōn quō  
 sibi tantī sceleris cōscius esset, sed utī rēs pūblica quiēta  
 foret nēve ex suā contentiōne sēditio oreretur. Ab hīs  
 640 longē dīvorsās litterās Q. Catulus in senātū recitāvit, quās  
 sibi nōmine Catilīnae redditās dīcēbat. Eārum exemplum  
 infrā scrīptum est:

**Ch. 33 :** 614, tanta . . . fuit, **V2(5)f**; 616, plēbis, **57**; 617, memoriā,  
**65**; 623, nisi, **99**; 625, cōsulātis . . . restituātis . . . impōnātis . . .  
 quaerāmus, **141**; 627, ultī, **178**. **Ch. 34 :** 633, petīverit, **114**; 636, nequī-  
 verit . . . esset, **138**; 638, sceleris, **54**.

35. "L. Catilīna Q. Catulō. Ēgregia tua fidēs, rē cognita, grāta mihi magnīs in meis periculīs, fidūciam commendātiōnī meae tribuit. Quam ob rem dēfēnsiōnem in novō 645 cōnsiliō nōn statuī parāre, satisfactiōnem ex nullā cōnscientiā dē culpā prōpōnere dēcrēvī, quam mē dius Fidius vērā licet cognōscās. Iniūriīs contumēliīsque concitātus, quod fructū labōris industriaeque meae prīvātus statum dīgnitātis nōn obtinēbam, pūblicā miserōrum causā prō meā 650 cōnsuētūdine suscēpī, nōn quī aes aliēnum meis nōminibus ex possessiōnibus solvere nōn possem (et aliēnīs nōminibus liberālītās Orestillae suīs filiaeque cōpiīs persolveret), sed quod nōn dīgnōs hominēs honōre honestātōs vidēbam mēque falsā suspīciōne aliēnātum esse sentiēbam. Hōc 655 nōmine satis honestās prō meō cāsū spēs reliquae dīgnitātis cōnservandae sum secūtus. Plūra cum scrībere vellem, nūntiātum est vim mihi parārī. Nunc Orestillā commendō tuaeque fideī trādō; eam ab iniūriā dēfendās per liberōs tuōs rogātus. Havētō." 660

36. Sed ipse paucōs diēs commorātus apud C. Flāminium in agrō Arrētīnō, dum vicīnitātem antea sollicitātam armīs exōrnat, cum fascibus atque aliīs imperī insīgnibus in castra ad Mānlium contendit. Haec ubi Rōmae comperta sunt, senātus Catilīnā et Mānlium hostīs iūdicat, cēterae 665 multitūdīnī diem statuit, ante quam sine fraude liceret ab armīs discēdere, praeter rērum capitālīum condemnātīs; praeterea dēcernit, utī cōsulēs dilēctum habeant, Antōnius cum exercitū Catilīnā persequī mātūret, Cicerō urbī praesidiō sit. 670

Eā tempestāte mihi imperium populī Rōmānī multō

Ch. 35 : 644, fidūciam . . . tribuit, V2(5)m ; 646, ex . . . cōnscientiā, V2(5)n ; 647, dē culpā, V2(5)o ; 650, pro . . . cōnsuētūdine, V2(5)p ; 653, persolveret, 129 ; 658, vellem, 150 ; 659, dēfendās, 132. Ch. 36 : 665, hostīs, 22 ; 665, iūdicat, 103 ; 665, cēterae, 10 ; 668, habeant . . . mātūret . . . sit, 111 ; 669, mātūret, 4.

maxumē miserābile vīsum est. Cui cum ad occāsum ab  
 ortū sōlis omnia domita armīs pārērent, domī ōtium atque  
 dīvitiae, quae prīma mortālēs putant, affluerent, fuere  
 675 tamen cīvēs, quī sēque remque pūblicam obstinātis animīs  
 perditum īrent. Namque duōbus senātī dēcrētīs ex tantā  
 multitūdine neque praemiō inductus coniūratiōnem patefē-  
 cerat neque ex castrīs Catilīnae quisquam omnium disces-  
 serat; tanta vīs morbī, atque utī tābēs, plērōsque cīvium  
 680 animōs invāserat.

**37.** Neque solum illis aliēna mēns erat, quī cōnsciī con-  
 iūratiōnis fuerant, sed omnīnō cūcta plēbēs novārum  
 rērum studiō Catilīnae incepta probābat. Id adeō mōre  
 suō vidēbātur facere. Nam semper in cīvitate, quibus  
 685 opēs nūllae sunt, bonīs invident, malōs extollunt, vetera  
 ōdēre, nova exoptant, odiō suārum rērum mūtārī omnia  
 student, turbā atque sēditiōnibus sine cūrā aluntur, quoniam  
 egestās facile habētur sine damno. Sed urbāna plēbēs ea  
 vērō praeceps erat dē multīs causīs. Primum omnium quī  
 690 ubique probrō atque petulantīā maxumē praestābant, item  
 aliī per dēdecora patrimonīs amissīs, postrēmō omnēs,  
 quōs flāgitium aut facinus domō expulerat, eī Rōmam sicut  
 in sentinam cōfluxerant. Deinde multī memorēs Sul-  
 lānae victōriae, quod ex gregāriīs militibus aliōs senātōrēs  
 695 vidēbant, aliōs ita dīvītēs ut rēgiō victū atque cultū aetātem  
 agerent, sibi quisque, sī in armīs foret, ex victōriā tālia  
 spērābat. Praetereā iuventūs, quae in agrīs manuum mer-  
 cēde inopiam tolerāverat, privātis atque pūblicis largi-  
 tiōnibus excita urbānum ōtium ingrātō labōrī praetulerat.  
 700 Eōs atque aliōs omnīs malum pūblicum alēbat; quō minus  
 mīrandum est hominēs egentīs, malīs mōribus, maxumā

Ch. 36 : 673, pārērent . . . affluerent, 152 ; 675, sēque remque, V3(11), 96 ; 676, perditum, 184 ; 676, senātī, V1(3). Ch. 37 : 686, ōdēre, 104 ; 694, victōriae, 54 ; 695, victū, 70 ; 701, hominēs . . . cōsuluisset, 170 ; 701, mōribus . . . spē, 71.

spē, reī publicae iūxtā ac sibi cōsuluisset. Praetereā quōrum victōriā Sullae parentēs prōscriptī, bona ērepta, iūs libertātis imminūtum erat, haud sānē aliō animō bellī ēventum exspectābant. Ad hōc quicumque aliārum atque 705 senātūs partium erant, conturbārī rem publicam quam minus valēre ipsī mālēbant. Id adeō malum multōs post annōs in civitātem revorterat.

**38.** Nam postquam Cn. Pompeiō et M. Crassō cōsulis tribūnīcia potestās restitūta est, hominēs adulescentēs 710 summam potestātem nactī, quibus aetās animusque ferōx erat, coepēre senātum crīminandō plēbem exagitāre, dein largiundō atque pollicitandō magis incendere, ita ipsī clārī potentēsque fierī. Contrā eōs summā ope nītēbātur plēraque nōbilitās, senātūs speciē, prō suā magnitudīne. 715 Namque, utī paucīs vērum absolvam, post illa tempora quicumque rem publicam agitāvēre, honestīs nōminibus, aliī sicutī populī iūra dēfenderent, pars quō senātūs auctoritās maxuma foret, bonum publicum simulantēs prō suā quisque potentiā certābant. Neque illīs modestia neque 720 modus contentiōnis erat; utrīque victōriam crudēlīter exercēbant.

**39.** Sed postquam Cn. Pompeius ad bellum maritimum atque Mithridāticum missus est, plēbis opēs imminūtae, paucōrum potentia crēvit. Eī magistrātūs prōvinciās alia- 725 que omnia tenēre; ipsī innoxii, flōrentēs sine metū aetātem agere, cēterōsque iūdiiciis terrēre, quō plēbem in magistrātū placidius trāctārent. Sed ubi primum dubiis rēbus novandī spēs oblāta est, vetūs certāmen animōs eōrum ar-rēxit. Quod sī prīmō proeliō Catilīna superior aut aequā 730

Ch. 37 : 704, imminūtum erat . . . exspectābant, 107 ; 708, annōs, 18.

Ch. 38 : 712, crīminandō, 183 ; 716, absolvam, 139 ; 717, agitāvēre, 125 ; 718, aliī . . . pars, V2(5)d ; 718, dēfenderent, 155 ; 719, foret, 140. Ch. 39 : 728, rēbus, 79 ; 730, quod sī, 102.

manū discessisset, profectō magna clādēs atque calamitās rem pūblicam oppressisset; neque illīs, quī victōriam adepti forent, diūtius eā ūtī licuisset, quā dēfessīs et exsanguibus, quī plūs posset, imperium atque libertātem extorqueret.

735 Fuēre tamen extrā coniūratiōnem complūrēs, quī ad Catilinam initiō profectī sunt. In eis erat Fulvius, senātoris filius, quem retrāctum ex itinere parēns necārī iussit. Isdem temporibus Rōmae Lentulus, sicutī Catilīna praecepērat, quōscumque mōribus aut fortūnā novīs rēbus  
740 idōneōs crēdebāt, aut per sē aut per aliōs sollicitābat, neque solum civīs, sed cuiusque modī genus hominum, quod modo bellō ūsuī foret.

40. Igitur P. Umbrēnō cuidam negōtium dat, utī lēgātōs Allobrogum requīrat eōsque, sī possit, impellat ad societātem bellī, existumāns pūblicē prīvātimque aere aliēnō  
745 oppressōs, praetereā quod nātūrā gēns Gallica bellicōsa esset, facile eōs ad tāle cōnsilium addūcī posse. Umbrēnus, quod in Galliā negōtiātus erat, plērisque prīncipibus civitātium nōtus erat atque eōs nōverat. Itaque sine morā,  
750 ubi prīmum lēgātōs in forō cōspexit, percontātus pauca dē statū civitātis et quasi dolēns eius cāsum requīrere coepit, quem exitum tantīs malīs spērarent. Postquam illōs videt querī dē avāritiā magistrātuum, accūsāre senātum, quod in eō auxiliī nihil esset, miserīs suis remedium mortem ex  
755 spectāre, “At ego,” inquit, “vōbīs, sī modo virī esse vultis, ratiōnem ostendam, quā tanta ista mala effugiātis.” Haec ubi dixit, Allobrogēs in maxumam spem adductī Umbrēnum ōrāre, ut suī miserērētur; nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod nōn cupidissimē factūrī essent, dum

Ch. 39 : 733, dēfessīs et exsanguibus, 32 ; 738, temporibus, V2(4)m ; 738, praecēperat, 128. Ch. 40 : 750, pauca, 21 and cf. 13 ; 752, videt, 109 ; 753, avāritiā, 78 ; 754, esset, 138 ; 755, vultis, 123 ; 756, effugiātis, 156 ; 758, suī, 57.

ea rēs civitātem aere aliēnō liberāret. Ille eōs in domum <sup>760</sup> D. Brūtī perdūcit, quod forō propinqua erat neque aliēna cōsiliī propter Semprōniam; nam tum Brūtus ab Rōmā aberat. Praetereā Gabīnium arcessit, quō maior auctōritās sermōnī inesset. Eō praesente coniūratiōnem aperit, nōminat sociōs, praetereā multōs cuiusque generis innoxios, quō <sup>765</sup> lēgātis animus amplior esset. Deinde eōs pollicitōs operam suam domum dīmittit.

**41.** Sed Allobrogēs diū in incertō habuēre quidnam cōsiliī caperent. In alterā parte erat aes aliēnum, studium bellī, magna mercēs in spē victōriae, at in alterā maiōrēs opēs, <sup>770</sup> tūta cōsilia, prō incertā spē certa praemia. Haec illīs volventibus tādem vicit fortūna rei pūblīcae. Itaque Q. Fabiō Sangae, cuius patrōciniō civitās plūrumum ūtēbātur, rem omnem, utī cognōverant, aperiunt. Cicerō, per Sangam cōsiliō cognitō, lēgātis praecēpit, ut studium coniūratiōnis <sup>775</sup> vehementer simulent, cēterōs adeant, bene polliceantur, dentque operam utī eōs quam maxumē manifēstōs habeant.

**42.** Īsdem ferē temporibus in Galliā citeriōre atque ulteriōre, item in agrō Picēnō, Bruttiō, Apūliā mōtus erat. Namque illi, quōs ante Catilīna dīmiserat, incōsultē ac <sup>780</sup> velutī per dēmentiam cūncta simul agēbant; nocturnīs cōsiliīs, armōrum atque tēlōrum portātiōnibus, festīnandō, agitandō, omnia plūs timōris quam periculī effēcerant. Ex eō numerō complūrīs Q. Metellus Celer praetor ex senātūs cōsultō, causā cognitā, in vincula coniēcerat, item in <sup>785</sup> citeriōre Galliā C. Murēna, quī eī prōvinciae lēgātus praeerat.

**43.** At Rōmae Lentulus cum cēterīs, quī prīncipēs

**Ch. 40:** 764, sermōnī, 34; 764, inesset . . . esset, 139. **Ch. 41:** 769, erat, 3; 771, illīs, 37; 776, simulent . . . adeant . . . polliceantur . . . dentque . . . habeant, 141. **Ch. 42:** 784, numerō, 80; 785, cōsultō, 68. **Ch. 43:** 788, cēterīs, 64.

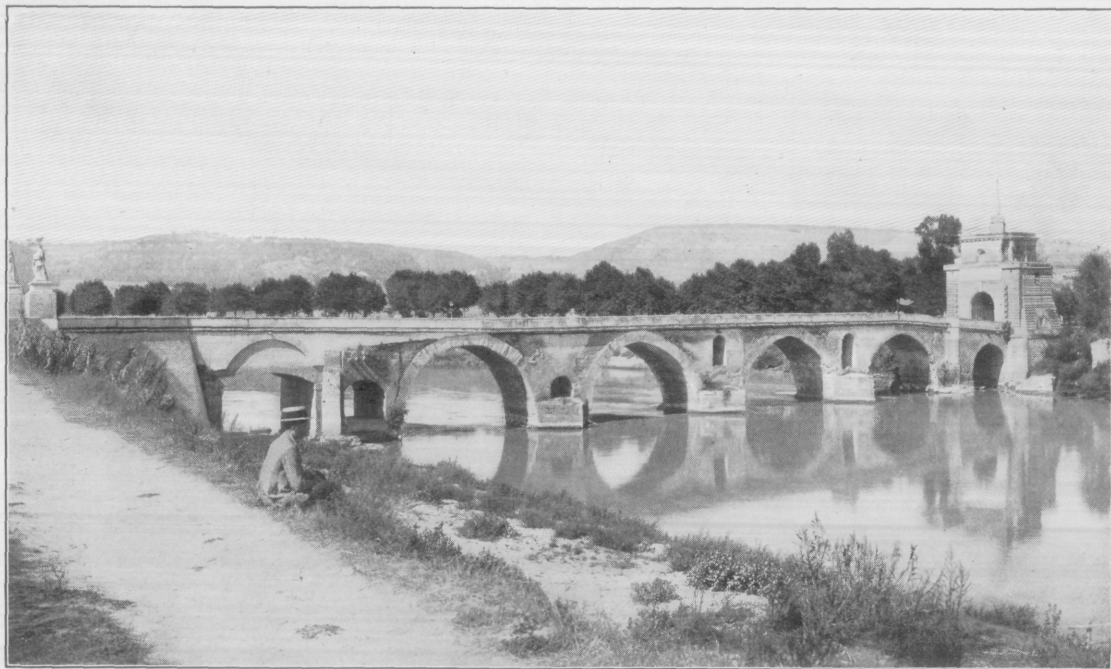


coniūratiōnis erant, parātīs ut vidēbātur magnīs cōpiīs,  
 790 cōstituerant utī, cum Catilīna in agrum Faesulānum cum  
 exercitū vēnisset, L. Bēstia tribūnus plēbis, cōntiōne habitā,  
 quererētur dē āctiōnibus Cicerōnis bellīque gravissimū in-  
 vidiam optumō cōsuli impōneret; eō signō proxumā nocte  
 cētera multitūdō coniūratiōnis suum quisque negōtium ex-  
 795 sequerētur. Sed ea dīvīsa hōc modō dīcēbantur: Statilius  
 et Gabīnius utī cum magnā manū duodecim simul oppor-  
 tūna loca urbis incenderent, quō tumultū facilior aditus ad  
 cōsulem cēterōsque, quibus īnsidiae parābantur, fieret;  
 Cethēgus Cicerōnis iānuam obsīderet eumque vī aggrede-  
 800 rētur, alius autem alium; sed filii familiārum, quōrum ex  
 nōbilitāte maxuma pars erat, parentīs interficerent; simul  
 caede et incendiō percussīs omnibus ad Catilīnam ērumpe-  
 rent. Inter haec parāta atque dēcrēta Cethēgus semper  
 querēbātur dē ignāviā sociōrum: illōs dubitandō et diēs  
 805 prōlātandō magnās opportunitātēs corrumpere; factō, nōn  
 cōsultō in tālī periculō opus esse, sēque, sī paucī adiu-  
 vārent, languentibus aliīs, impetum in cūriam factūrum.  
 Nātūrā ferōx, vehemēns, manū prōmptus erat; maxumum  
 bonum in celeritāte putābat.

810 44. Sed Allobrogēs ex praeceptō Cicerōnis per Gabī-  
 nium cēterōs conveniunt; ab Lentulō, Cethēgō, Statiliō,  
 item Cassiō postulant iūs iūrandum, quod signātum ad cīvīs  
 perferant; aliter haud facile eōs ad tantum negōtium im-  
 pellī posse. Cēterī nihil suspicantēs dant, Cassius sēmet  
 815 eō brevī ventūrum pollicētur ac paulō ante lēgātōs ex urbe  
 proficīscitur. Lentulus cum eīs T. Volturcium quendam  
 Crotōniēsem mittit, ut Allobrogēs, prius quam domum

Ch. 43: 790, cōstituerant, 4; 792, bellī, 46; 798, quibus, 31; 798, parā-  
 bantur and 801, erat, 127; 805, corrumpere . . . opus esse . . . factūrum, 167;  
 805, factō, 72; 806, periculō, 65. Ch. 44: 813, perferant, 156.





THE MULVIAN BRIDGE

pergerent, cum Catilinā, datā atque acceptā fidē, societātem cōfirmārent. Ipse Volturciō litterās ad Catilinam dat, quārum exemplum infrā scriptum est:

820

“Quī sim, ex eō, quem ad tē mīsī, cognōscēs. Fac cōgitēs in quantā calamitāte sis, et meminerīs tē virum esse: cōsiderēs, quid tuae ratiōnēs postulent: auxilium petās ab omnibus, etiam ab infumīs.”

Ad hōc mandāta verbīs dat: cum ab senātū hostis iūdi-<sup>825</sup> cātus sit, quō cōsiliō servitia repudiet? in urbe parāta esse quae iusserit; nē cunctētur ipse propius accēdere.

45. Hīs rēbus ita āctīs, cōstitutā nocte quā proficī-  
scerentur, Cicerō per lēgātōs cūcta ēdoctus L. Valeriō  
Flaccō et C. Pomptinō praetōribus imperat, ut in ponte<sup>830</sup>  
Mulviō per insidiās Allobrogum, comitātūs dēprehendant;  
rem omnem aperit, cuius grātiā mittēbantur; cētera, utī  
factō opus sit, ita agant, permittit. Illi, hominēs militārēs,  
sine tumultū praesidiīs collocātīs, sicutī praeceptum erat,  
occultē pontem obsidunt. Postquam ad id locī lēgātī cum<sup>835</sup>  
Volturciō vērunt et simul utrimque clāmor exortus est,  
Galli, cito cognitō cōsiliō, sine morā praetōribus sē trādunt.  
Volturcius primō cohortātus cēterōs gladiō sē ā multitudīne  
dēfendit, deinde, ubi ā lēgātīs dēsertus est, multa prius  
dē salūte suā Pomptinum obtestātus, quod eī nōtus erat,<sup>840</sup>  
postrēmō timidus ac vītiae diffidēs velut hostibus sēsē  
praetōribus dēdit.

46. Quibus rēbus cōfectīs omnia properē per nūtiōs  
cōsuli dēclārantur. At illum ingēns cūra atque laetitia  
simul occupāvēre; nam laetābātur intellegēs coniūratiōne<sup>845</sup>  
patefactā civitātem periculīs ēreptam esse, porrō autem  
anxius erat dubitāns, in maxumō scelere tantīs civibus

Ch. 44: 818, pergerent, 149; 822, cōgitēs, 135; 823, cōsiderēs . . .  
pētās, 132; 825, ad hōc, V2(5)h; 825, iudicātus sit, 151; 826, repudiet, 137.

Ch. 45: 832, cuius, 53; 835, locī, 51.

dēprehēnsīs, quid factō opus esset: poenam illōrum sibi onerī, impūnitātem perdundae rei pūblīcae fore crēdebāt. Igitur cōfirmātō animō vocārī ad sēsē iubet Lentulum, Cethēgum, Statilium, Gabīnium, itemque Caepārium Tar-  
 850 racīnēsem, quī in Apūliam ad concitanda servitia profici-  
 cīscī parābat. Cēterī sine morā veniunt; Caepārius, paulō  
 ante domō ēgressus, cognitō indicio ex urbe profūgerat.  
 855 Cōsul Lentulum, quod praetor erat, ipse manū tenēns in  
 senātum perdūcit, reliquōs cum cūstōdibus in aedem Con-  
 cordiae venīre iubet. Eō senātum advocat magnāque  
 frequentīā eius ōrdinis Volturcium cum lēgātīs intrōdūcit,  
 Flaccum praetōrem scrīnium cum litterīs, quās ā lēgātīs  
 860 accēperat, eōdem afferre iubet.

47. Volturcius interrogātus dē itinere, dē litterīs, postrēmō quid aut quā dē causā cōsiliī habuisset, primō fingere alia, dissimulāre dē coniūrātiōne; post, ubi fidē pūblicā dicere iūssus est, omnia, utī gesta erant, aperit,  
 865 docetque sē paucīs ante diēbus ā Gabīniō et Caepāriō  
 socium adscītum, nihil amplius scīre quam lēgātōs; tantum  
 modo audīre solitum ex Gabīniō P. Autrōnium, Ser. Sullam  
 L. Vargunteium, multōs praetereā in eā coniūrātiōne esse.  
 Eadem Gallī fatentur ac Lentulum dissimulantem coargu-  
 870 unt praeter litterās sermōnibus, quōs ille habēre solitus  
 erat: ex librīs Sibyllīnīs rēgnum Rōmae tribus Cornēliis  
 portendī; Cinnam atque Sullam antea, sē tertium esse, cui  
 fātum foret urbis potīrī; praetereā ab incēnsō Capitoliō  
 illum esse vicēsimum annum, quem saepe ex prōdigīs  
 875 haruspīcēs respondissent bellō civīlī cruentum fore.

Igitur perlēctīs litterīs, cum prius omnēs signa sua cognōvissent, senātus dēcernit utī, abdicātō magistratū, Lentulus itemque cēterī in liberīs custōdiīs habeantur. Itaque

Ch. 46: 852, concitanda, 182; 852, proficiēscī, 162; 853, parābat, 127.  
 Ch. 47: 864, gesta erant, 128; 865, diēbus, 75; 869, eadem, 13; 872, cui, 35.

Lentulus P. Lentulō Spinthērī, quī tum aedīlis erat, Cethēgus Q. Cornificiō, Statilius C. Caesarī, Gabīnius M. Crassō, 88<sup>o</sup> Caepārius (nam is paulō ante ex fugā retrāctus erat) Cn. Terentiō senātōrī trāduntur.

48. Intereā plēbs, coniūrātiōne patefactā, quae primō cupida rerum novarum nimis bellō favēbat, mūtātā mente Catilīnae cōnsilia exsecrārī, Cicerōnem ad caelum tollere; 88<sup>5</sup> velutī ex servitūte ērepta gaudium atque laetitiam agitābat; namque alia bellī facinora praedae magis quam dētrīmentō fore, incendium vērō crudēle immoderātum ac sibi maxumē calamitōsum putābat, quippe cui omnēs cōpiaē in ūsū cotidiānō et cultū corporis erant. 89<sup>o</sup>

Post eum diem quīdam L. Tarquinius ad senātum adductus erat, quem ad Catilīnam proficīscētem ex itinere retrāctum aiēbant. Is cum sē dīceret indicātūrum dē coniūrātiōne, sī fidēs pūblica data esset, iūssus ā cōnsule quae scīret ēdīcere, eadem ferē quae Volturcius dē parātīs 89<sup>5</sup> incendiīs, dē caede bonōrum, dē itinere hostium, senātum docet; praetereā sē missum ā M. Crassō, quī Catilīnae nūntiāret, nē eum Lēntulus et Cethēgus aliīque ex coniūrātiōne dēprehēnsī terrērent, eōque magis properāret ad urbem accēdere, quō et cēterōrum animōs reficeret et illī 90<sup>o</sup> facilius ē periculō ēriperentur. Sed ubi Tarquinius Crasum nōmināvit, hominem nōbilem maxumīs dīvitiīs, summā potentiā, aliī rem incēdibilem ratī, pars tametsī vērū existumābant, tamen quia in tālī tempore tanta vīs hominis magis lēniunda quam exagitanda vidēbātur, plēriūque Crassō 90<sup>5</sup> ex negōtiīs privātīs obnoxīī conclāmant indicem falsum esse, dēque eā rē postulant utī referātur. Itaque cōsultante Cicerōne frequēns senātus dēcernit Tarquinī indicium

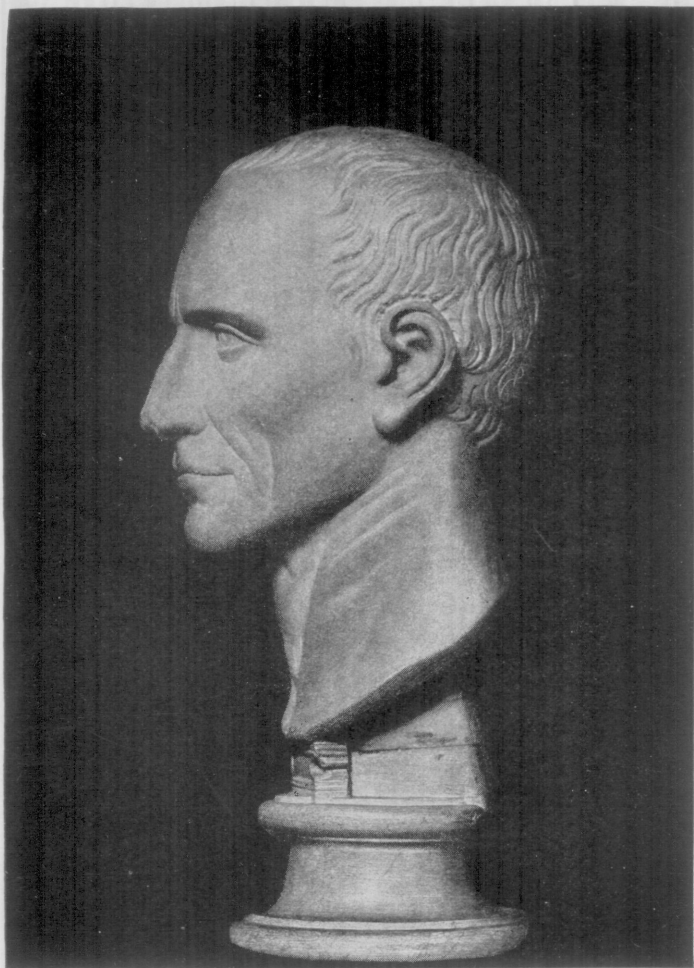
Ch. 48: 889, cui, 37; 890, erant, 126, V3(13); 895, parātīs, 174; 899, terrērent . . . properāret, 141; 904, existumābant, 124, V3(5); 905, lēniunda . . . exagitanda, 168; 906, negōtiīs, 78.

falsum vidēri eumque in vinctis retinendum neque amplius  
 910 potestatem faciendam, nisi de eo indicaret, cuius consilio  
 tantam rem esset mentitus. Erant eo tempore qui existimarent indicium illud a P. Autronio machinatum, quo  
 facilius appellato Crasso per societatem periculi reliquos  
 illius potentiam tegeret. Alii Tarquinium a Cicerone im-  
 915 missum aiēbant, ne Crassus more suo suscepto malorum  
 patrocinio rem publicam conturbaret. Ipsum Crassum  
 ego postea praedicantem audivi tantam illam contumeliam  
 sibi ab Cicerone impositam.

49. Sed isdem temporibus Q. Catulus et C. Piso neque  
 920 precibus neque gratia neque pretio Ciceronem impellere  
 quivēre uti per Allobroges aut alium indicem C. Caesar  
 falso nominaretur. Nam uterque cum illo gravis ini-  
 micitiās exercēbant; Piso oppugnatus in iudicio pecuni-  
 arum repetundarum propter cuiusdam Transpadani sup-  
 925 plicium iniustum, Catulus ex petitione pontificatus odio in-  
 census, quod extrema aetate, maximis honoribus usus, ab  
 adulescentulo Caesare victus discesserat. Res autem op-  
 portuna videbatur, quod is privatum egregiam liberalitate,  
 publice maximis muneribus grandem pecuniam dabat.  
 930 Sed ubi consulem ad tantum facinus impellere nequeunt,  
 ipsi singillatim circumeundo atque ementiundo quae se ex  
 Volturcio aut Allobrogibus audisse dicerent, magnam illi  
 invidiam conflaverant, usque eo ut non nulli equites Ro-  
 mani, qui praesidi causam cum telis erant circum aedem  
 935 Concordiae, seu periculi magnitudine seu animi mobilitate  
 impulsī, quo studium suum in rem publicam clarius esset,  
 egredienti ex senatu Caesarī gladio minitarentur.

50. Dum haec in senatu aguntur et dum legatis Allobro-

Ch. 48: 910, nisi, 98; 916, conturbaret, 139. Ch. 49: 919, temporibus, V2(4)m; 923, exercēbant, 1; 923, pecuniarum, 58; 933, usque eo, V3(6); 937, minitarentur, 144. Ch. 50: 938, aguntur, 118.



JULIUS CAESAR

From the marble bust in the British Museum





gum et T. Volturciō, comprobātō eōrum indicio, praemia dēcernuntur, libertī et paucī ex clientibus Lentulī dīvorsis 940 itineribus opificēs atque servitia in vicīs ad eum ēripiundum sollicitābant, partim exquirēbant ducēs multitudinum, quī pretiō rem pūblicam vexāre solitī erant; Cethēgus autem per nūntiōs familiam atque libertōs suōs, lēctōs et exercitātōs, ōrābat ut grege factō cum tēlis ad sēsē irrumperent. 945 Cōsul ubi ea parārī cognōvit, dispositis praesidiis, ut rēs atque tempus monēbat, convocātō senātū refert, quid dē eis fierī placeat, quī in cūstōdiam trāditī erant. Sed eōs paulō ante frequēns senātus iūdicāverat contrā rem pūblicam fēcisse. Tum D. Iūnius Silānus, prīmus sententiam 950 rogātus, quod eō tempore cōsul dēsīgnātus erat, dē eis, quī in cūstōdiis tenēbantur, et praetereā dē L. Cassiō, P. Furiō, P. Umbrēnō, Q. Anniō, sī dēprehēnsī forent, supplicium sūmundum dēcrēverat; isque postea, permōtus ōrātiōne C. Caesaris, pedibus in sententiam Ti. Nerōnis 955 itūrum sē dīxit, quod dē eā rē praesidiis additis referundum cēnsuerat.

Sed Caesar, ubi ad eum ventum est, rogātus sententiam ā cōsule huiusce modī verba locūtus est :

51. "Omnīs hominēs, patrēs cōnscriptī, quī dē rēbus 960 dubiis cōsultant, ab odio, amīcitiā, irā atque misericordiā vacuōs esse decet. Haud facile animus vērūm prōvidet, ubi illa officiunt, neque quisquam omnium lubīdinī simul et ūsuī pārui. Ubi intenderis ingenium, valet; sī lubīdō possidet, ea dominātur, animus nihil valet. Magna mihi 965 cōpia est memorandī, patrēs cōnscriptī, quī rēgēs atque populī irā aut misericordiā impulsī male cōsulerint; sed ea mālō dīcere, quae maiōrēs nostrī contrā lubīdinem animī

Ch. 50 : 944, per nūntiōs, 29; 947, monēbat, 128; 957, cēnsuerat, 127.

Ch. 51 : 961, odio . . . misericordiā, 63; 962, esse decet, 170; 964, pārui, 105; 965, nihil, 20.

suū rēctē atque ōrdine fēcēre. Bellō Macedonicō, quod cum  
 970 rēge Persē gessimus, Rhodiōrum cīvītās magna atque ma-  
 gnifica, quae populī Rōmānī opibus crēverat, infīda atque  
 advorsa nōbīs fuit; sed postquam, bellō cōfectō, dē Rho-  
 diīs cōsultum est, maiōrēs nostrī, nē quis dīvitiārum magis  
 quam iniūriāe causā bellum inceptum dīceret, impūnītōs  
 975 eōs dīmīsēre. Item bellīs Pūnicīs omnibus, cum saepe  
 Carthāginiēnsēs et in pāce et per indūtias multa nefāria  
 facinora fēcissent, numquam ipsī per occāsionem tālia  
 fēcēre; magis quid sē dignum foret quam quid in illōs iūre  
 fierī posset quaerēbant.

980 Hōc item vōbīs prōvidendum est, patrēs cōscriptī, nē  
 plūs apud vōs valeat P. Lentulī et cēterōrum scelus quam  
 vostra dignitās, neu magis irae vostrae quam fāmae cōsu-  
 lātis. Nam sī digna poena prō factīs eōrum reperītur, no-  
 vom cōsiliū approbō; sī magnitūdō sceleris omnium  
 985 ingenia exsuperat, hīs ūtendum cēseō, quae lēgibus com-  
 parāta sunt. Plērīque eōrum, quī ante mē sententiās  
 dixerunt, compositē atque magnificē cāsum reī pūblīcae  
 miserātī sunt; quae bellī saevitia esset, quae victīs acci-  
 derent, ēnumerāvēre: rapī virginēs, puerōs; dīvelli liberōs  
 990 ā parentum complexū; mātērēs familiārum patī quae vic-  
 tōribus collubuissent; fāna atque domōs spoliārī; caedem,  
 incendia fierī; postrēmō armīs, cadāveribus, cruōre atque  
 lūctū omnia complērī. Sed, per deōs immortālīs, quō illa  
 ōrātiō pertinuit? An utī vōs infēstōs coniūrātiōnī faceret?  
 995 Scīlicet, quem rēs tanta et tam atrōx nōn permōvit, eum  
 ōrātiō accendet. Nōn ita est, neque cuiquam mortālīum  
 iniūriāe suae parvae videntur; multī eās gravius aequō  
 habuēre.

Ch. 51: 969, ōrdine, 70; 974, impūnītōs, 174; 977, facinora, 14; 978, sē, 68; 980, vōbīs, 40; 984, sīn, 100; 993, deōs, 30; 994, infēstōs, V2(4)e; 997, suae, 86.

Sed alia aliis licentia est, patrēs cōscriptī. Quī dēmissī in obscurō vitam habent, sī quid irācundiā delīquere, paucī<sup>1000</sup> sciunt; fāma atque fortūna eōrum parēs sunt; quī magnō imperiō praeditī in excelsō aetātem agunt, eōrum facta cūctī mortālēs nōvere. Ita in maxumā fortūnā minuma licentia est; neque studere neque odiſse, sed minumē irāſci decet; quae apud aliōs irācundia dicitur, ea in imperiō<sup>1005</sup> superbia atque crūdēlitās appellātur. Equidem ego sic existumō, patrēs cōscriptī, omnīs cruciātūs minōrēs quam facinora illōrum esse; sed plērique mortālēs postrēma meminere, et in hominibus impiis sceleris eōrum oblītī dē poenā disserunt, sī ea paulō saevior fuit. 1010

D. Silānum, virum fortem atque strēnuum, certō sciō quae dixerit, studiō rei pūblīcae dīxisse, neque illum in tantā rē grātiā aut inimicitias exercere; eōs mōrēs eamque modestiam virī cognōvī. Vērum sententia eius mihi nōn crūdēlis (quid enim in tālis hominēs crūdēle fierī<sup>1015</sup> potest?) sed aliēna ā rē pūblicā nostrā vidētur. Nam proſectō aut metus aut inīiūria tē subēgit, Silāne, cōnsulem dēsīgnātum, genus poenae novom dēcernere. Dē timōre supervacāneum est disserere, cum praesertim dīligentiā clārissimī virī cōsulis tanta praesidia sint in armīs. Dē<sup>1020</sup> poenā possum equidem dicere, id quod rēs habet, in lūctū atque miseriīs mortem aerumnārum requiem, nōn cruciātum esse; eam cūcta mortālium mala dissolvere; ultrā neque cūrae neque gaudiō locum esse. Sed, per deōs immortalīs, quam ob rem in sententiam nōn addidistī, utī prius verberibus in eōs animadvorterētur? An quia lēx Porcia vetat? At aliae lēgēs item condemnātīs cīvibus nōn animam ēripī, sed exsilium permittī iubent. An quia gravius est verberārī

Ch. 51: 1003, maxumā . . . licentia, 187; 1005, quae . . . ea, 7; 1006, ego, 82; 1008, postrēma, V3(2); 1013, eōs . . . eam, 6; 1018, dēcernere, 21; 1027, ēripī . . . permittī, 169.

quam necārī? Quid autem acerbum aut nimis grave est  
 1030 in hominēs tantī facinoris convictōs? Sīn quia levius est,  
 quī convenit in minōre negōtiō lēgem timēre, cum eam in  
 māiōre neglēgeris?

At enī quīs reprehendet quod in parricidās reī pūblicae  
 dēcrētum erit? Tempus, diēs, fortūna, cuius lubidō gen-  
 1035 tibus moderātur. Illis meritō accidet quicquid ēvēnerit;  
 cēterum vōs, patrēs cōnscriptī, quid in aliōs statuātis, cōn-  
 sīderāte. Omnia mala exempla ex rēbus bonīs orta sunt;  
 sed ubi imperium ad ignārōs eius aut minus bonōs pervēnit,  
 novom illud exemplum ab dignīs et idōneīs ad indignōs et  
 1040 nōn idōneōs trānsfertur. Lacedaemoniū dēvictis Athēniēn-  
 sibus trīgintā virōs imposuēre, quī rem pūblicam eōrum  
 trāctārent. Eī primō coepēre pessimum quemque et  
 omnibus invīsum indemnātum necāre; ea populus laetārī et  
 meritō dicere fierī. Post, ubi paulātīm licentia crēvit, iūxtā  
 1045 bonōs et malōs lubidinōsē interficere, cēterōs metū terrēre;  
 ita cīvītās servitūte oppressa stultae laetitiae gravīs poenās  
 dedit. Nostrā memoriā victor Sulla cum Damasippum et  
 aliōs eius modī, quī malō reī pūblicae crēverant, iugulārī  
 iūssit, quis nōn factum eius laudābat? Hominēs scelestōs  
 1050 et factiōsōs, quī sēditionibus rem pūblicam exagitāverant,  
 meritō necātōs aiēbant. Sed ea rēs magnae initium clādis  
 fuit. Nam utī quisque domum aut villam, postrēmō vās  
 aut vestimentum alicuius concupīverat, dabat operam, ut is  
 in prōscriptōrum numerō esset. Ita illī, quibus Damasippī  
 1055 mors laetitiae fuerat, paulō post ipsī trahēbantur, neque  
 prius finis iugulandī fuit quam Sulla omnīs suōs dīvitiis  
 explēvit. Atque ego haec nōn in M. Tulliō neque hīs  
 temporibus vereor; sed in magnā cīvītate multa et varia

Ch. 51: 1033, reprehendet . . . dēcrētum erit, 106; 1035, ēvēnerit, 125;  
 1038, minus bonōs, 189; 1042, quemque, 92; 1049, iūssit, 120; 1053, concupī-  
 verat . . . dabat, 107; 1057, explēvit, 119.

ingenia sunt. Potest aliō tempore, aliō cōsule, cui item exercitus in manū sit, falsum aliquid prō vērō crēdī; ubi <sup>1060</sup> hōc exemplō per senātūs dēcrētum cōsul gladium ēdūxerit, quis illī finem statuet aut quis moderābitur?

Maiōrēs nostrī, patrēs cōnscrīptī, neque cōnsilī neque audāciae umquam eguēre, neque illis superbia obstābat, quō minus aliēna īstitutā, sī modo proba erant, imitāren- <sup>1065</sup> tur. Arma atque tēla militāria ab Samnītibus, īnsīgnia magistrātuum ab Tūscīs plēraque sūmpsērunt; postrēmō quod ubique apud sociōs aut hostīs idōneum vidēbātur, cum summō studiō domī exsequēbantur; imitārī quam invidēre bonīs mālēbant. Sed eōdem illō tempore Graeciae <sup>1070</sup> mōrem imitātī verberibus animadvortēbant in cīvīs, dē condemnātīs summum supplicium sūmēbant. Postquam rēs pūblica adolēvit et multitūdine cīvium factiōnēs valuēre, circumvenīrī innocentēs, alia huiusce modī fierī coepēre, tum lēx Porcia aliaeque lēgēs parātae sunt, quibus lēgibus <sup>1075</sup> exsilium damnātīs permissum est. Hanc ego causam, patrēs cōnscrīptī, quō minus novom cōnsilium capiāmus, in primīs magnam putō. Profectō virtūs atque sapientia maior illis fuit, quī ex parvīs opibus tantum imperium fēcēre, quam in nobīs, quī ea bene parta vix retinēmus. <sup>1080</sup>

Placet igitur eōs dīmittī et augērī exercitum Catilīnae? Minumē. Sed ita cēnsēō: pūblicandās eōrum pecūniās, ipsōs in vīculīs habendōs per mūnicipia, quae maxumē opibus valent; neu quis dē eīs postea ad senātum referat, nēve cum populō agat; quī aliter fēcerit, senātum exīstu- <sup>1085</sup> märe eum contrā rem pūblicam et salūtem omnium factūrum."

52. Postquam Caesar dīcundī finem fēcīt, cēterī verbō,

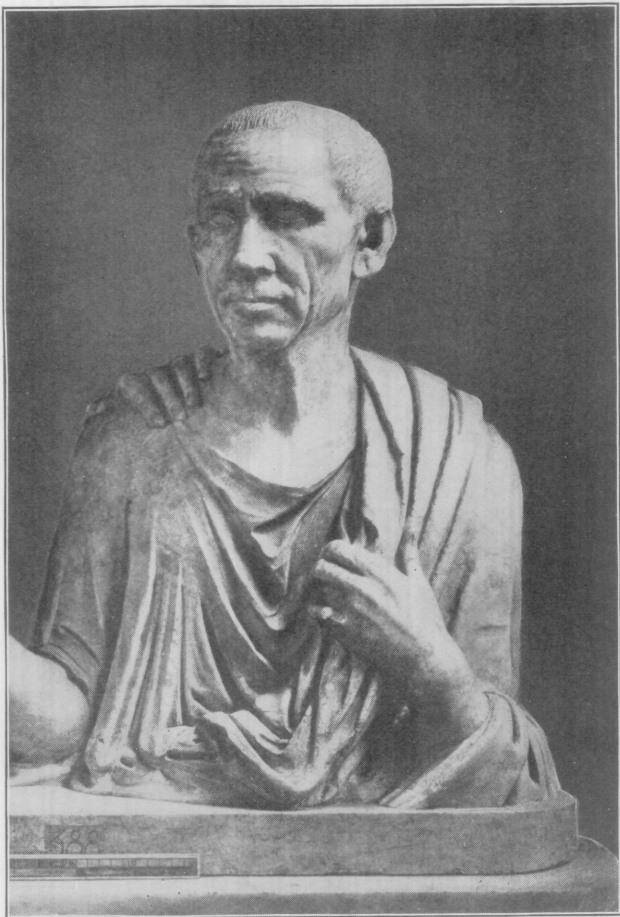
Ch. 51: 1060, sit, 157; 1063, cōnsilī . . . audāciae, 61; 1065, imitārentur, 142; 1075, lēgibus, 9; 1079, maior fuit, 2; 1083, ipsōs, 87. Ch. 52: 1088, dīcundī, V1(5).

alius alii variē adsentiēbantur. At M. Porcius Catō rogā-  
 1090 tus sententiam huiusce modī orātiōnem habuit :

“ Longē mihi alia mēns est, patrēs cōscriptī, cum rēs  
 atque pericula nostra cōsiderō, et cum sententiās nōn  
 nullōrum ipse mēcum reputō. Illi mihi disseruisse viden-  
 tur dē poenā eōrum, quī patriae, parentibus, ārīs atque  
 1095 focīs suīs bellum parāvēre; rēs autem monet cavēre ab illīs  
 magis quam quid in illōs statuāmus cōsultāre. Nam cētera  
 maleficia tum persequāre, ubi facta sunt; hōc nisi prōvi-  
 deris nē accidat, ubi ēvenit, frūstrā iūdicia implōrēs: captā  
 urbe nihil fit reliquī victīs. Sed, per deōs immortalīs, vōs  
 1100 ego appellō, quī semper domōs, villās, signa, tabulās vo-  
 strās plūris quam rem pūblicam fēcistis; sī ista, cuiuscum-  
 que modī sunt quae amplexāminī, retinēre, sī voluptātibus  
 vostrīs otium praebēre voltis, expergisciminī aliquandō et  
 capessite rem pūblicam. Nōn agitur dē vectigālibus neque  
 1105 dē sociōrum iniūriis; libertās et anima nostra in dubiō est.

Saepe numerō, patrēs cōscriptī, multa verba in hōc  
 ordine fēcī, saepe dē lūxuriā atque avāritiā nostrōrum  
 cīvium questus sum, multōsque mortālīs eā causā advorsōs  
 habeo: quī mihi atque animō meō nullius umquam delictī  
 1110 grātiā fēcissem, haud facile alterius lubidinī male facta  
 condonābam. Sed ea tametsī vōs parvī pendebātis, tamen  
 rēs pūblica fīrma erat; opulentia negligentiam tolerābat.  
 Nunc vērō nōn id agitur, bonīsne an malīs mōribus vivā-  
 mus, neque quantum aut quam magnificum imperium  
 1115 populī Rōmānī sit, sed haec, cuiuscumque modī videntur,  
 nostra an nobīscum unā hostium futūra sint. Hīc mihi  
 quisquam mānsuētūdinem et misericordiam nōminat? Iam  
 pridem equidem nōs vēra vocābula rērum amīsimus: quia

Ch. 52 : 1089, alius alii, 94; 1090, sententiam, 21; 1095, cavēre, 162;  
 1099, deōs, 30; 1101, plūris, 59; 1110, fēcissem, 158; 1116, hostium, 50;  
 1116, hīc, 84.



MARCUS PORTIUS CATO

From the doubtful bust of Cato and Portia in the Capitoline Museum at Rome





bona aliēna largīrī liberālītās, malārum rērum audācia fortitūdō vocātur, eō rēs pūblica in extrēmō sita est. Sint <sup>1120</sup> sānē, quoniam ita sē mōrēs habent, liberālēs ex sociōrum fortūnīs, sint misericordēs in fūribus aerārī: nē illī sanguinem nostrum largiantur et, dum paucīs scelerātīs par-cunt, bonōs omnīs perditum eant.

Bene et compositē C. Caesar paulō ante in hōc ōrdine <sup>1125</sup> dē vitā et morte disseruit, crēdō, falsa exīstumāns ea, quae dē inferīs memorantur, dīvorsō itinere malōs ā bonīs loca taetra, inculta, foeda atque formīdulōsa habēre. Itaque cēnsuit pecūniās eōrum pūblicandās, ipsōs per mūnicipia in cūstōdiīs habendōs, vidēlicet timēns, nē sī Rōmae sint, <sup>1130</sup> aut ā populāribus coniūrātiōnis aut ā multitūdine conductā per vim ēripiantur. Quasi vērō malī atque scelestī tantum modo in urbe et nōn per tōtam Ītaliā sint, aut nōn ibi plūs possit audācia, ubi ad dēfendundum opēs minōrēs sunt. Quā rē vānum equidem hōc cōnsilium est, sī perī- <sup>1135</sup> culum ex illīs metuit; sīn in tantō omnium metū sōlus nōn timet, eō magis rēfert mē mihi atque vōbīs timēre. Quā rē cum dē P. Lentulō cēterisque statuētis, prō certō habē-tōte vōs simul dē exercitū Catilīnae et dē omnibus coniūrā-tīs dēcernere. Quantō vōs attentius ea agētis, tantō illīs <sup>1140</sup> animus infirmior erit; sī paululum modo vōs languēre viderint, iam omnēs ferōcēs aderunt.

Nōlite exīstumāre maiōrēs nostrōs armīs rem pūblicā ex parvā magnā fēcisse. Sī ita rēs esset, multō pulcher-  
rumam eam nōs habērēmus; quippe sociōrum atque cīvium, <sup>1145</sup> praetereā armōrum atque equōrum, maior cōpia nōbīs quam illīs est. Sed alia fuēre, quae illōs magnōs fēcēre, quae

Ch. 52: 1120, sita est, 172; 1123, parcut, 118; 1131, populāribus, 73; 1132, quasi . . . sint . . . possit, 155; 1137, mē . . . timēre, 60; 1140, agētis . . . erit, 128; 1138, statuētis . . . agētis . . . erit . . . viderint . . . aderunt, 106; 1143, exīstumāre, 160.

nōbīs nūlla sunt: domī industria, forīs iūstum imperium, animus in cōsulundō liber, neque dēlīctō neque lubīdinī  
 1150 obnoxius. Prō hīs nōs habēmus lūxuriam atque avāritiam, pūblicē egestātem, prīvātim opulentiam; laudāmus divitiās, sequimur inertiam; inter bonōs et malōs discrīmen nūllum; omnia virtūtis praemia ambitīō possidet. Neque mīrum: ubi vōs sēparātim sibi quisque cōnsilium capitis, ubi domī  
 1155 voluptātibūs, hīc pecūniae aut grātiaē servītis, eō fit, ut impetus fiat in vacuam rem pūblicam.

Sed ego haec omittō. Coniūrāvēre nōbilissimī cīvēs patriam incendere; Gallōrum gentem infēstissimam nōminī Rōmānō ad bellum arcessunt, dux hostium cum  
 1160 exercitū suprā caput est; vōs cunctāminī etiam nunc et dubitātis, quid intrā moenia dēprēnsīs hostibus faciātis? Misereāminī, cēseō (dēlīquēre hominēs adulēscēntulī per ambitīōnem) atque etiam armātōs dīmīttātis. Nē ista vōbīs mānsuētūdō et misericordia, sī illī arma cēperint, in miserie  
 1165 riam convortat. Scīlicet rēs ipsa aspera, sed vōs nōn timētis eam. Immō vērō maxumē; sed inertīā et mollitiā animī alius alium exspectantēs cunctāminī, vidēlicet dīs immortalībus cōnfīsī, quī hanc rem pūblicam saepe in maxumīs perīculīs servāvēre. Nōn vōtis neque suppliciīs  
 1170 muliebribus auxilia deōrum parantur; vigilandō, agundō, bene cōsulundō prōspera omnia cēdunt: ubi sōcordiae tē atque ignāviae trādiderīs, nēquiquam deōs implōrēs: irātī infēstīque sunt. Apud maiōrēs nostrōs A. Mānlius Torquātus bellō Gallicō filium suum, quod is contrā imperium in  
 1175 hostem pugnāverat, necārī iūssit, atque ille ēgregius adulēscēns immoderātae fortitūdinis morte poenās dedit; vōs dē crūdēlissimīs parricidīs quid statuātis, cunctāminī? Vidēli-

Ch. 52: 1154, quisque, V2(5)d; 1165, convortat, 130; 1167, alius alium exspectantēs, 94, V2(5)d; 1174, bellō, 65; 1175, necārī, 169; 1176, fortitūdinis, 58.

cet cētera vīta eōrum huic scelerī obstat. Vērūm parcite dignitatī Lentulī, sī ipse pudicitiae, sī fāmae suae, sī dīs aut hominibus umquam ūllīs pepercit; ignōscite Cethēgī adulē- 1180 scentiae, nisi iterum patriae bellum fēcit. Nam quid ego dē Gabiniō, Statiliō, Caepariō loquar? Quibus sī quicquam umquam pēnsī fuisset, nōn ea cōsilia dē rē publicā habuissent. Postrēmō, patrēs cōnscriptī, sī meherculē peccātō locus esset, facile paterer vōs ipsā rē corrigī, quoniam verba 1185 contemnit; sed undique circumventī sumus. Catilīna cum exercitū faucibus urget, aliī intrā moenia atque in sinū urbis sunt hostēs, neque parārī neque cōsulī quicquam potest occultē; quō magis properandum est.

Quā rē ego ita cēseō; cum nefariō cōnsiliō scelerātōrum 1190 cīvium rēs publicā in maxuma perīcula vēnerit, eiūque indiciō T. Volturcī et lēgātōrum Allobrogum convictī cōfessīque sint, caedem, incendia aliaque sē foeda atque crūdēlia facinora in cīvīs patriamque parāvisse, dē cōfessīs, sicutī dē manifēstīs rērum capitālium, mōre maiōrum supplicium 1195 sūmundum.”

53. Postquam Catō adsēdit, cōsulārēs omnēs itemque senātūs magna pars sententiam eius laudant, virtūtem animī ad caelum ferunt; aliī aliōs increpantēs timidōs vocant, Catō clārus atque magnus habētur: senātī dēcrētum fit, 1200 sicutī ille cēnsuerat.

Sed mihi multa legentī, multa audientī, quae populus Rōmānus domī militiaeque, marī atque terrā praeclāra facinora fēcit, forte lubuit attendere, quae rēs maxumē tanta negōtia sustinuisset. Sciēbam saepe numerō parvā 1205 manū cum magnīs legiōnibus hostium contendisse; co-

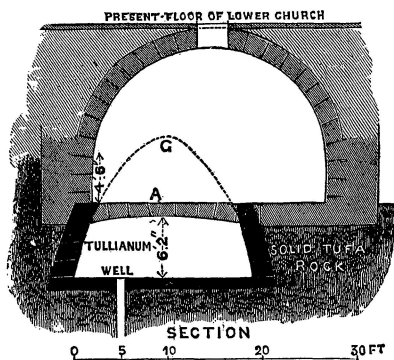
Ch. 52: 1178, cētera, 10; 1182, loquar, 134; 1182, quibus, 101; 1183, fuisset . . . habuissent . . . esset . . . paterer, 154; 1191, vēnerit . . . convictī . . . sint, 151. Ch. 53: 1203, marī atque terrā, 62, V2(5)v; 1205, sustinuisset, 137.

gnōveram parvīs cōpiīs bella gesta cum opulentīs rēgibus ;  
 ad hōc saepe fortūnae violentiam tolerāvisse ; facundiā  
 Graecōs, glōriā bellī Gallōs ante Rōmānōs fuisse. Ac mihi  
 1210 multa agitantī cōnstābat paucōrum cīvium ēgregiam virtū-  
 tem cūncta patrāvisse, eōque factum, utī dīvitiās paupertās,  
 multitudinem paucitās superāret. Sed postquam lūxū  
 atque dēsidiā cīvitās corrupta est, rūsus rēs pūblica ma-  
 gnitūdine suā imperātōrum atque magistrātuum vitia sus-  
 1215 tentābat, ac, sicutī effētā parente, multīs tempestātibus  
 haud sānē quisquam Rōmae virtūte magnus fuit. Sed  
 memoriā meā ingentī virtūte, dīvorsīs mōribus fuēre virī  
 duo, M. Catō et C. Caesar. Quōs quoniam rēs obtulerat,  
 silentiō praeterīre nōn fuit cōnsilium, quīn utriusque nātū-  
 1220 ram et mōrēs, quantum ingeniō possum, aperīrem.

54. Igitur eīs genus, aetās, ēloquentia prope aequālia  
 fuēre, magnitūdō animī pār, item glōria, sed aliā aliī. Caesar  
 beneficiīs ac mūnificentiā magnus habēbātur, integritāte  
 vītae Catō. Ille mānsuētūdine et misericordiā clārus  
 1225 factus, huic sevērītās dignitātem addiderat. Caesar dandō,  
 sublevandō, ignōscundō, Catō nihil largiundō glōriam  
 adeptus est. In alterō miserīs perfugium erat, in alterō  
 malīs perniciēs ; illiūs facilitās, huius cōstantia laudābātur.  
 Postrēmō Caesar in animum indūxerat labōrāre, vigilāre ;  
 1230 negōtiīs amīcōrum intentus sua negligere, nihil dēnegāre,  
 quod dōnō dīgnum esset ; sibi magnum imperium, exerci-  
 tum, bellum novom exoptābat, ubi virtūs ēnitēscere posset.  
 At Catōnī studium modestiae, decoris, sed maxumē sevērī-  
 tātis erat ; nōn dīvitiīs cum dīvite neque factiōne cum  
 1235 factiōsō, sed cum strēnuō virtūte, cum modestō pudōre,

Ch. 53 : 1212, superāret, 145 ; 1215, tempestātibus VI(7) ; 1217, virtūte  
 . . . mōribus, 71. Ch. 54 : 1224, ille . . . huic, 83 ; 1227, in alterō, 94 ;  
 1227, miserīs . . . malīs, 35 ; 1229, labōrāre, vigilāre, 162 ; 1230, negōtiīs, 43 ;  
 1230, negligere . . . dēnegāre, 166 ; 1231, dōnō, 68.





SECTION OF THE TULLIANUM.

The prison consists of a large upper chamber and a smaller underground circular dungeon, cut in the solid rock. The latter was originally a kind of well-house and probably extended upwards to a point (G). This upper part was afterwards cut off when the upper prison was added, and a ceiling of overlapping stone slabs was built with a small hole (A) through which criminals were thrust, and either left there to die of cold and starvation, or strangled by the executioner. According to tradition, St. Peter and St. Paul were confined in the upper prison in the time of Nero, and therefore a church dedicated to St. Peter and called S. Pietro in Carcere (St. Peter in Prison) was built above it.

cum innocente abstinentiā certābat; esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat: ita, quō minus petēbat glōriam, eō magis illum adsequēbātur.

55. Postquam, ut dixī, senātus in Catōnis sententiam discessit, cōsul optimum factū ratus noctem quae īnstābat 1240 antecapere, nē quid eō spatiō novārētur, triumvīrōs quae supplicium postulābat parāre iubet; ipse praesidiīs dispositīs Lentulum in carcerem dēdūcit; idem fit cēterīs per praetōrēs. Est in carcere locus, quod Tulliānum appellātur, ubi paululum ascenderīs ad laevam, circiter duodecim 1245 pedēs humī dēpressus: eum mūniunt undique parietēs atque īnsuper camera lapideīs fornicibus iūncta, sed incultū, tenebrīs, odōre foeda atque terribilis eius faciēs est. In eum locum postquam dēmissus est Lentulus, vindicēs rērum capitālium, quibus praeceptum erat, laqueō gulam frē- 1250 gēre. Ita ille patricius ex gente clāriissimā Cornēliōrum, quī cōsulāre imperium Rōmae habuerat, dīgnum mōribus factisque suīs exitium vītāe invēnit. Dē Cethēgō, Statiliō, Gabīniō, Caepāriō eōdem modō supplicium sūmptum est.

56. Dum ea Rōmae geruntur, Catilīna ex omnī cōpiā, 1255 quam et ipse addūxerat et Mānlius habuerat, duās legiōnēs īstituit, cohortīs prō numerō militum complet. Deinde, ut quisque voluntārius aut ex sociīs in castra vēnerat, aequāliter distribuerat, ac brevī spatiō legiōnēs numerō hominum explēverat, cum initiō nōn amplius duōbus mīlibus habuis- 1260 set. Sed ex omnī cōpiā circiter pars quarta erat militāribus armīs īstrūcta; cēterī, ut quemque cāsus armāverat, sparōs aut lanceās, aliī praeacūtās sudīs portābant. Sed postquam Antōnius cum exercitū adventābat, Catilīna per montīs iter facere, modo ad urbem, modo in Galliam versus castra 1265

Ch. 55: 1240, factū, 185; 1241, antecapere, 161; 1243, per praetōrēs, 29; 1245, ascenderīs, 147; 1247, incultū, etc., 78. Ch. 56: 1255, geruntur, 118; 1257, īstituit . . . complet, 103; 1260, mīlibus, 69.



movēre, hostibus occāsiōnem pugnandī nōn dare; spērābat prope diem magnās cōpiās sēsē habitūrum, sī Rōmae socii incepta patrāvissent. Intereā servitia repudiābat, cuius initiō ad eum magnae cōpiae concurrēbant, opibus coniūrā-  
 1270 tiōnis frētus, simul aliēnum suīs ratiōnibus existumāns vidērī causam cīvium cum servīs fugitivīs communicāvisse.

57. Sed postquam in castra nūntius pervēnit Rōmae coniūratiōnem patefactam, dē Lentulō et Cethēgō cēterisque, quōs suprā memorāvī, supplicium sūmptum, plērīque,  
 1275 quōs ad bellum spēs rapīnārum aut novārum rērum studium illexerat, dilābuntur; reliquōs Catilīna per montis asperōs magnīs itineribus in agrum Pistōriēsem abdūcit eō cōnsiliō, utī per trāmitēs occultē perfugeret in Galliam Trānsalpīnam.

1280 At Q. Metellus Celer cum tribus legiōnibus in agrō Picēnō praesidēbat, ex difficultāte rērum eadem illa existumāns quae suprā dīximus Catilīnam agitāre. Igitur ubi iter eius ex perfugīs cognōvit, castra properē mōvit ac sub ipsīs rādīcibus montium cōnsēdit, quā illī dēscēsus erat  
 1285 in Galliam properantī. Neque tamen Antōnius procul aberat, utpote quī magnō exercitū locīs aequiōribus expeditō in fugā sequerētur. Sed Catilīna, postquam videt montibus atque cōpiīs hostium sēsē clausum, in urbe rēs advorsās, neque fugae neque praesidī ūllam spem, optimum factū ratus in tālī rē fortunam bellī temptāre, statuit  
 1290 cum Antōniō quam primum cōnfligere.

Itaque cōntiōne advocātā huiusce modī ōrātiōnem habuit:

58. "Compertum ego habeō, milītēs, verba virtūtem nōn addere, neque ex ignāvō strēnum neque fortem ex timidō ex-  
 1295 erciturū ōrātiōne imperātōris fierī. Quanta cuiusque animō

Ch. 56: 1269, opibus, 72. Ch. 57: 1277, itineribus, 70; 1286, locīs, 78; 1289, fugae . . . praesidī, 47. Ch. 58: 1293, compertum, 171; 1295, animō, 36.

audācia nātūrā aut mōribus inest, tanta in bellō patēre solet. Quem neque glōria neque perīcula excitant, nēquīquam hortēre; timor animī auribus officit. Sed ego vōs, quō pauca monērem, advocāvī, simul utī causam meī cōnsilī aperīrem.

1300

Scītis equidem, mīlitēs, sōcordia atque ignāvia Lentulī quantam ipsī nōbīsque clādem attulerit, quōque modō, dum ex urbe praesidia opperior, in Galliam proficīscī nequīverim. Nunc vērō quō locō rēs nostrae sint, iūxtā mēcum omnēs intellegitis. Exercitūs hostium duo, ūnus ab urbe, 1305 alter ā Galliā obstant; diūtius in hīs locīs esse, sī maxumē animus ferat, frūmentī atque aliārum rērum egestās prohibet; quōcumque ire placet, ferrō iter aperiundum est. Quā propter vōs moneō, utī fortī atque parātō animō sītis, et, cum proelium inībitis, memineritis vōs dīvitiās, decus, 1310 glōriam, praetereā libertātem atque patriam in dextrīs vostrīs portāre. Sī vincimus, omnia nōbīs tūta erunt, commeātus abundē, mūnicipia atque colōniae patēbunt; sīn metū cesserimus, eadem illa advorsa fient, neque locus neque amicus quisquam teget quem arma nōn tēxerint. 1315 Praetereā, mīlitēs, nōn eadem nōbīs et illīs necessitudō impendet; nōs prō patriā, prō libertāte, prō vitā certāmus, illis supervacāneum est prō potentiā paucōrum pugnāre.

Quō audācius aggrediāminī memorēs prīstinae virtūtis. Licuit vōbīs cum summā turpitūdine in exsiliō aetātem 1320 agere, potuistis nōn nullī Rōmae, āmissīs bonīs, aliēnās opēs exspectāre; quia illa foeda atque intoleranda virīs vidēbantur, haec sequī dēcrēvistis. Sī haec relinquere volītis, audāciā opus est; nēmō nisi victor pāce bellum mūtāvit.

Ch. 58: 1299, monērem, 140; 1302, ipsī, 87; 1306, locīs, 62; 1306, esse, 165; 1310, inībitis, 120; 1314, sīn, 100; 1314, cesserimus . . . fient . . . teget . . . tēxerint, 106; 1319, virtūtis, 54; 1322, illa . . . haec, 83; 1324, nisi, 99; 1324, pāce, 76; 1324, mūtāvit, 105.

1325 Nam in fugā salūtem spērāre, cum arma, quibus corpus tegitur, ab hostibus āvorterīs, ea vērō dēmentia est. Semper in proeliō eīs maxumum est periculum, quī maxumē timent: audācia prō mūrō habētur.

Cum vōs cōsiderō, militēs, et cum facta vostra aestumō,  
1330 magna mē spēs victōriae tenet. Animus, aetās, virtūs vostra mē hortantur, praetereā necessitudō, quae etiam timidōs fortis facit. Nam multitudō hostium nē circumvenīre queat, prohibent angustiae locī. Quod sī virtūtī vostrae fortūna invīderit, cavēte inultī animam āmittātis, neu captī  
1335 potius sicutī pecora trucidēminī quā virōrum mōre pugnantes cruentam atque lūctuōsam victōriam hostibus relinquātis.”

59. Haec ubi dīxit, paululum commorātus sīgna canere iubet atque instrūctōs ordinēs in locum aequom dēducit.  
1340 Dein remōtis omnium equīs, quō militibus exaequātō periculō animus amplior esset, ipse pedes exercitum prō locō atque cōpiīs instruit. Nam, utī plānitiēs erat inter sinistrōs montis et ab dexterā rupe aspera, octō cohortis in fronte cōstituit, reliquārum sīgna in subsidiō artius collocat; ab eīs centuriōnēs, omnīs lēctōs et ēvocātōs, praetereā  
1345 ex gregāriīs militibus optumum quemque armātum in primam aciem subducit. C. Mānlium in dextrā, Faesulānum quendam in sinistrā parte cūrāre iubet; ipse cum libertis et cālōnibus propter aquilam adstitit, quam bellō Cimbricō  
1350 C. Marius in exercitū habuisse dīcēbātur.

At ex alterā parte C. Antōnius, pedibus aeger, quod proeliō adesse nequibat, M. Petreiō lēgātō exercitum permittit. Ille cohortis veterānās, quās tumultūs causā cōn-

Ch. 58: 1326, ea, 6; 1331, timidōs fortis, V3(2), 22; 1334, āmittātis . . . trucidēminī . . . relinquātis, 136. Ch. 59: 1340, periculō, 79; 1343, rupe, 78; 1348, cūrāre, V2(3); 1349, adstitit, 4; 1351, pedibus, 68; 1353, tumultūs, 53.

scripserat, in fronte, post eās cēterum exercitum in subsidiis locat; ipse equō circumiēns ūnum quemque nōmināns 1355 appellat, hortātur, rogat ut meminerint sē contrā latrōnēs inermōs prō patriā, prō liberis, prō āris atque focis suis certāre. Homō militāris, quod amplius annōs trīgintā tribūnus aut praefectus aut lēgātus aut praetor cum magnā glōriā in exercitū fuerat, plērōsque ipsōs factaque eōrum fortia nō- 1360 verat; ea commemorandō militum animōs accendēbat.

60. Sed ubi, omnibus rēbus explōrātis, Petreius tubā sīgnum dat, cohortis paulatim incēdere iubet; idem facit hostium exercitus. Postquam eō ventum est, unde ā feren- 1365 tārīs proelium committī posset, maxumō clāmōre cum infēstis sīgnis concurrunt; pīla omittunt, gladiis rēs geritur. Veterānī, pristināe virtūtis memorēs, comminus ācritēr instāre, illi haud timidi resistunt; maxumā vī certātur.

Intereā Catilīna cum expeditis in primā aciē vorsārī, labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciis arcessere, 1370 omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferire; strēnuī militis et bonī imperātōris officia simul exsequēbātur. Petreius ubi videt Catilīnam, contrā ac ratus erat, magnā vī tendere, cohortem praetōriam in mediōs hostis inducit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibī resistentis in- 1375 terficit; deinde utrimque ex lateribus cēterōs aggreditur. Mānlius et Faesulānus in primis pignantēs cadunt. Catilīna postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucis relictum videt, memor generis atque pristināe suae dīgnitātis in cōnfertissimōs hostis incurrit, ibique pugnāns cōnfoditur. 1380

61. Sed cōnfectō proeliō tum vērō cernerēs, quanta audācia quantaque animi vīs fuisset in exercitū Catilīnae. Nam ferē quem quisque vīvos pugnandō locum cēperat,

Ch. 59: 1355, equō, 72; 1358, annōs, 69. Ch. 60: 1363, dat, 109; 1364, eō, V3(6); 1365, posset, 157; 1368, timidi, 11; 1374, mediōs, 10; 1376, lateribus, 63 Ch. 61: 1381, cernerēs, 129; 1383, vīvos, V1(1).

eum āmissā animā corpore tegēbat. Paucī autem, quōs  
 1385 mediōs cohors praetōria disiēcerat, paulō dīvorsius, sed  
 omnēs tamen advorsīs vulneribus conciderant. Catilīna  
 vērō longē ā suis inter hostium cadāvera repertus est, pau-  
 lulum etiam spīrāns ferōciamque animī, quam habuerat  
 vīvos, in voltū retinēns. Postrēmō ex omnī cōpiā neque in  
 1390 proeliō neque in fugā quisquam cīvis ingenuus captus est;  
 ita cūctī suae hostiumque vītae iūxtā pepercerant.

Neque tamen exercitus populī Rōmānī laetam aut in-  
 cruentam victōriam adeptus erat; nam strēnuissimus quis-  
 que aut occiderat in proeliō aut graviter vulnerātus dis-  
 1395 cesserat. Multī autem, quī ē castrīs visundī aut spoliandī  
 grātiā prōcesserant, volentēs hostīlia cadāvera, amīcum  
 aliī, pars hospitem aut cognātum reperiēbant; fuēre item  
 quī inimīcōs suōs cognōscerent. Ita variē per omnem  
 exercitum laetitia, maeror, lūctūs atque gaudia agitābantur.

**Ch. 61 :** 1393, quisque, 92 ; 1395, visundī . . . grātiā, 181 ; 1396, amīcum  
 . . . hospitem, 187, V4(2) ; 1397, aliī, pars, V2(5)d ; 1398, cognōscerent, 157.

## NOTES

References marked § are to the syntactical appendix ; those beginning with the Roman figure V, as V 2 (5) a, refer to the introduction, Chapter V.

### CHAPTER I

#### *The mutual dependence of mind and body*

1. **Omnīs** : the regular acc. plu., -īs, of third declension vowel stems is retained alongside of -ēs in nouns, adjs. and partics. in decreasing proportion until the Augustan period, after which it is found occasionally in adjs. and more often in partics. \*G. 38. 3, 57, R. 5, 79, N. 2 ; G. (S.) 57, R. 4, 83, R. 2 ; H. 107. 4 and 6 ; A. 77 ; B. 37, 40, 67 a. **sēsē student praestāre** : an example of Sallust's use of the unusual ; the simple inf. is more natural when the subjects are the same : **sēsē** emphasizes the subject. V 3 (1).

2. **vītam . . . transeant** : an unusual combination : **vītam dēgere** is more frequent. §§ 17, 141 ; V 2 (5) a. **silentiō** : *i.e. in inactivity and so unnoticed.* § 70.

3. **prōna** : *i.e. with faces to the ground.*

4. **nostra** : emphatic position, contrasted with **pecora. in animō et corpore sita est** : *our every activity depends upon mind as well as body.* § 172.

5. **magis** : we let the mind rule and the body serve, rather than live as cattle. **alterum . . . alterum** refer to **animī imperiō** and **corporis servitiō** rather than to **imperiō** and **servitiō**. § 94.

7. **ingēnī** : nouns of the second declension in -ius and -ium have the gen. sing. for the most part in -ī instead of -īī until the first century A.D., *without change of accent.* G. 33, R. 1 ; H. 83. 6 ; A. 49 b ; B. 25. 2.

9. **quam maxumē longam** : for the more usual **longissumam** ; Sallust has many examples of this. V 2 (5) b. The spelling **maxumē** for **maximē** is in keeping with Sallust's effort after archaic effects. V 1 (4).

10. **virtūs** here means *mental prowess* (**animī imperiō, ingēnī . . . opibus glōriam**) rather than *valor or bravery*, meanings so common in Caesar. V 2 (4) a.

\* G = Gildersleeve-Lodge ; G. (S.) = Gildersleeve-Lodge, School Edition ; H. = Harkness ; A. = Allen and Greenough ; B. = Bennett.

11. **habētur** : *is considered*; really different from **est** in the preceding clause. Sallust uses this word very freely and with great variety.

12. **mortālīs** : the substantival use of this word = *man* began in poetry; Sallust uses it frequently.

14. **incipiās . . . cōsuluerīs** : the mood is undoubtedly associated with the ideal or indefinite second person. § 147.

15. **mātūrē factō** : the verbal force of **factō** is indicated by the adverbial modifier **mātūrē**, a favorite practice with Sallust. V 2 (5) c.

## CHAPTER 2

### *The superiority of mind claimed in all walks of life*

17. **rēgēs . . . pars . . . aliī** : V 2 (5) d, a mixed form of apposition, instead of **pars . . . pars** or **aliī . . . aliī**, common in Sallust. **id** refers to **rēgēs**, but is attracted by **nōmen**. § 6.

19. **agitābātur** : V 2 (2); Sallust is partial to frequentative verbs; he also uses inchoatives freely. They indicate repeated or intensive action or entrance upon an action respectively, but with Sallust they are largely an affectation, more or less colloquial. **sua** : V 3 (2). Sallust's partiality for the substantival use of adjs. and partics. is illustrated on nearly every page.

20. **postea . . . quam = posteāquam = postquam**, more usually separated in Sallust. **Cȳrus . . . nātiōnēs** : first mention of definite historical characters. Cyrus (559 B.C.) conquered whole races (= **nātiōnēs**), the Greeks subjugated cities. Note the chiasitic order, § 187; V 4 (2). Lacedemonians and Athenians both are mentioned because Grecian domination vacillated between Sparta and Athens. Athens was in control from 490 to 404, Greece's greatest century, and on an equality with Sparta at some other times.

21. **coepēre** : Sallust uses this, the popular, form of the perfect almost entirely; only Caesar and Cicero entirely avoid this form. V 2 (1).

23. **maxumam . . . maxumō** : very emphatic by reason of the repetition.

24. **tum demum** : *only then, = not till then*; very forceful. **periculō atque negōtiīs** : the simplest explanation of this combination is by hendiadys, *dangerous undertaking*. § 188.

30. **prō labōre** : note the pairing of words in this sentence. On **invāsēre**, see § 107.

34. **quae . . . aedificant** : the cognate force of **quae** requires emphatic translation : *what men accomplish by agriculture, commerce, architecture*. § 13.

36. **vītam . . . trānsiēre** : ch. 1 has the same combination, but many editions insist on reading **trānsēgēre** here. There is authority for either reading, and the more unusual combination is selected because such is characteristic of Sallust.

37. **quibus . . . onerī** : in the double dat. construction one expresses the

person advantaged or disadvantaged and the other is a complementary dat., otherwise called the dat. of purpose, or dat. of end. § 41.

38. *iūxtā* : frequently used with *aestumō* in Sallust.

39. *mihi vivere . . . vidētur* : cf. *mihi . . . vidētur . . . quaerere*, ch. 1, where the inf. is the subject of *vidētur*. § 168.

42. *cōpiā* : the abl. especially often shows a composite force. Here we feel the local force, both in space and time, also source and cause.

### CHAPTER 3

#### *Difficulties in writing history. Sallust ensnared by political ambition*

43. *bene facere rei pūblīcae* : the dat. is ind. obj. with the special verb *bene facere* (sometimes written together), in which *bene* is practically cognate acc. = *bona*. Cf. Greek *καλῶς ποιεῖν* = *καλὰ ποιεῖν*. Cf. H. 426, I, N. 2 ; A. 368, 2, N. Cf. *bene dīcere* below.

44. *pāce vel bellō* : the prep. is regularly omitted by Sallust only when there is an attribute. Cf. l. 166, where the prep. is used. *clārum* : agrees with the subject of *fieri*, which must be supplied in the acc. case, though the dat. would be expected after *licet*. § 170.

45. *facta* : is cognate with *fēcēre* and object of both verbs.

47. *actōrem* : the Mss. and editors vary between *actōrem* and *auctōrem*, but *actōrem* is more in keeping with *fēcēre* and *facta* above. *Scriptōrem et actōrem* take up in chiasmic order *fēcēre . . . facta . . . scrīpsēre*.

49. *dehinc* : for the more usual *deinde*, first used thus by Sallust and by him only here in the *Cat.* Cf. *Jug.* 5 ; V 2 (4) b. *quae . . . putant : ea*, the antecedent of *quae*, is subject of *dicta* ; *quae* is object of *reprehenderis*, and *dēlicta* agrees with it as predicate. For *reprehenderis*, see § 147.

51. *ubi* : introduces an adversative clause without an adversative particle. § 186 ; V 4 (1) ; G. 483, N. ; A. 601 c ; B. 346 b. *quae . . . dūcit : ea*, to be supplied as the antecedent of *quae*, is object of both *accipit* and, together with *ficta*, *dūcit*, and *quae sunt* must be supplied with *suprā ea*. *What each one thinks easy for himself to do, he is ready to accept : what is more than this, he regards as falsehoods, just as if (they were) imaginary.*

54. *adulēscēntulus* : what is a diminutive and how formed ? G. 181. 12 ; H. 340, 341 ; A. 243 ; B. 148. 1.

55. *rem pūblīcam* : *politics*, as often in this piece. § 19.

56. *prō pudōre . . . avāritia* : note the balance and parallelism of the first set of words here, *pudōre* and *audācia*, and the chiasmus of the others.

58. *inter . . . vitia* : G. 394, N. 2. *imbēcilla aetās* refers to his unsophisticated youth.

59. *ambitiōne* serves as ablative of means with both *corrupta* and *tenēbatur* ; *corrupta* goes with *aetās*.



60. nihilō minus : G. 490, R.

61. eādem : eādem and quā both belong with fāmā and invidiā.

## CHAPTER 4

### *Determination to leave politics and write*

66. servīlibus officiīs : Sallust means that he must attend to intellectual matters and leave hunting and farming to others who would not perform the higher duties. Even with this apology, we must see in him a degeneracy from the old Roman view of simplicity and rusticity. *intentum* : in agreement with the implied subject of *conterere* and *agere*. § 43; V 3 (4).

68. eōdem : Sallust is fond of such an adverbial antecedent. V 3 (6). *carptim* : what is the origin of this adverbial form? G. 91. 1; H. 306. 2; A. 215. 2; B. 77. 5. Cf. *paulātim*, l. 97, and often.

72. *quam vēriſsumē* : the regular form for *as . . . as possible* in all periods. There is a choice between such a combination with a form of *posse*, as here, and such a combination without a form of *posse*. The superlative is often strengthened by *multō*, *longē*, *vel*, *ūnus*, *ūnus omnium*.

## CHAPTER 5

### *Character of Catiline*

77. *L. Catilīna* : his full name was *Lucius Sergius Catilīna*. See Smith's Dict. Biog. for the account of his Sergian ancestry.

79. *bella intestīna* : the Sulla-Marius war and the revolt of Lepidus. *caedēs* : he slew, besides others, his brother, his son, his brother-in-law. *rapīnae*, *discordia cīvīlis* : in keeping with *bella intestīna* and *caedēs*.

80. *ibi* refers to the preceding list = *in eīs*. *corpus* : supply *eī erat*.

81. *cuiquam crēdibile est* : *cuiquam* is the logical subject of *crēdibile est*, but syntactically the agent, the dat. being used probably under the influence of *crēdibile*, which is built up on *crēdere*. *Crēdibile est* is really impersonal, with the preceding clause for subject, though we might analyze the idiomatic *suprā quam* = *beyond what* into *beyond that which* or *more than what is possible of belief* (= *suprā quam id quod*). §§ 25, 91.

82. *animus audāx* : again the copula is omitted. This passage is noteworthy for its omission of copula, conjunction, everything that tends to interfere with the asyndetic affect. It is the vigorous description of a vigorous man. § 186; V 4 (1). *cuius rei lubet* : for *cuiuslubet rei*, a case of tmesis of unusual occurrence, probably only here. § 190; V 4 (4). See G. 107. 4, N.

83. *simulātor* : a noun of agent instead of an adjective. Cf. *Jug.* 64. *contemptor animus*. The use as an adjective is more general with persons,

though not universal there. **sui profusus**: the only instance of the gen. with **profusus**. V 3 (7). See G. 374, N. 1.

**84. satis . . . parum**: supply **eī erat** again.

**91. quae utraque**: the antecedents are **ferōx inopiā rei familiāris et cōnsentiā scelerum**, hence the neut. plu. **Uterque** and **quisque** are commonly used as adjectives with substantives, as substantives with pronouns; therefore we should expect the partitive gen. here instead of **quae**. G. 371, R. 1; H. 442. 4; A. 346 d; B. 355. 2 and a.

**92. incitābant**: cf. **agitābātur**, above, l. 89; each verb has the prominent position in its sentence, and the meanings are virtually identical, though the one is active, the other passive.

**95. suprā**: *from times past*, an infrequent use. V 2 (4) c. **repetere**: **ut** + the subjunctive would be expected as the more natural construction with **hortārī**. **Repetere** and **disserere** have the same objects. § 162.

**96. quō modō**: cf. **quibus modīs**, l. 88, above: this is manner, the other is means. Is this a possible explanation of the difference in number?

**99. disserere**: this discussion is not altogether germane to the subject, nor is it in keeping with his boast in ch. 4. The digression is interesting, however, and has bearing upon the general conditions surrounding Catiline. Sallust did much toward eliminating unnecessary material from history, and making a beginning toward more modern history.

## CHAPTER 6

### *Early Rome*

**100. Rōmam**: Sallust's view of the foundation of Rome, though as well founded as other views, was not the most popular, in fact was not held before his time. The order was Trojans (Aeneas), Lavinium, Alba Longa, Rome. Rome may be with Sallust simply the Roman power, without the intervening steps of four hundred years preceding the city's actual foundation. This view is strengthened by the use of **Aboriginēs**, which must refer to an indigenous race of the time of the Trojan settlement. So, probably, he did not differ so much from others.

**103. sine lēgibus, sine imperiō**: the negative force of these combinations is indicated by the adj. following. These phrases with the following adjs. form a regular Sallustian group in his usual chiasitic order. § 187; V 4 (2).

**104. ūna**: in agreement with a neut. plu., **moenia** = *the city*. It can be so used meaning *one* because **moenia** is used only in the plu. Distributive numerals are regularly used with such nouns, as **binōsque imperātōrēs** below. l. 124; G. 97 and RR.; H. 163, 164; A. 136, 137; B. 79, 81. 4.

**105. incrēdibile . . . est**: the subject is the **quam** clause following, the subjunctive of which is dependent upon the verbal side of **memorātū**.

**106. ita . . . facta erat:** this clause is not found in most Mss., but one has it, and it is quoted by Augustine, *Ep.* 138, 10. This kind of clause is common, more or less, to all periods of Latin literature; certainly Sallust uses such summaries. V 2 (5) f. *brevī*: a more frequent adverbial form than the more regular *breviter*. Many substantival advs. are formed from the abl. § 140; G. 91. 2; G. (S.) 91 (adjectives) 1 and 3 and 92. 1; H. 307. 2; A. 214 e and N., 215. 4; B. 77.

**108. rēs = the state.**

**109. satis = very;** G. 439, N. 3. From *satis* to *pollēns* is an example of alliteration and anaphora combined. *plēraque mortālium*: the gen. is good in all Latin, but we would expect *plēraque mortālia*, because Sallust prefers the adjectival use, especially the sing. See note to ch. 17, l. 313.

**111. temptāre:** this is the first instance of the historical infinitive in Sallust; he uses it very frequently, as becomes a historian, though he is the first historian to use it very frequently. It is not rare in Plautus. Its object, *populum Romānum*, or *eās*, is omitted. § 166; V 3 (8).

**113. parāre:** the absolute use (= *to make preparation*) is rare. Sallust is not afraid of it. Cf. *Jug.* 60 and 76, in the latter place, preceded by *festināre*, as here. V 2 (3).

**114. hostibus obviam īre:** cf. A. 370 c: the dat. with this combination is possibly due to the influence of verbs compounded with *ob*, etc., which is essentially an ind. obj.; by defining *obviam* as *athwart the path*, *hostibus* may be explained as a dative of personal interest, a more likely explanation.

**115. post, ubi:** *post* as an adv. is not unusual; so many other preps. It is interesting, however, that this combination occurs twice in this chapter, and several other times in the *Cat.* See ll. 189, 284, 469, 1044, etc.

**116. portābant:** colloquial for *ferō*: *portō* is generally used of material burdens. V 1 (7).

**118. lēgitimum = regulated by law.**

**120. reī pūblicae cōsultābant:** the only case of the dat. with this verb, which is probably colloquial for *alicuī cōsulere*. The use of *cōsultābant* is in keeping with Sallust's preference for frequentative verbs. See note on l. 19 and V 2 (2).

**121. cūrae** is gen. Harper's Lexicon does not give the dat. with *similitūdō*. Cf. G. 359, R. 1. Even the adjective *similis* prefers the gen. *patrēs*: Sallust was thinking of *senātōrēs*, which rests upon *senex*. The *patrēs* were so called because they were heads of families or clans.

**122. cōservandae . . . reī pūblicae:** a rare purpose construction. Once in Terence, mostly in Sallust and Tacitus. § 181; V 3 (9).

**123. in superbiam dominātiōnemque:** an example of hendiadys? § 188.

**124. annua . . . imperātōrēs:** they elected two rulers each year.

**126. insolēscere:** Sallust uses many inchoative verbs, though with less

frequency than frequentatives. See note, l. 19. G. 133, v; 190. 2; 191. 2; H. 277-280, 365; A. 263, 1; B. 155, 1.

## CHAPTER 7

*Striving for military glory*

**127. tempestāte:** the usual word in Sallust (= *tempore*): it is archaic and poetic. V 1 (7).

**128. rēgibus . . . suspectiōrēs:** the dat. is an ind. obj. (= *furnish suspicion for kings*). So with *eīs . . . formīdulōsa*. Both adjs. are active, including a cognate.

**130. cīvītās . . . crēverit:** such an emphatic position for the subj. and for the subjunc. is not unusual. The clause is subject of *incrēdibile est* and dependent upon *memorātū*, as in ch. 6, l. 106.

**131. tanta . . . incesserat:** cf. *virtūs . . . domuerat*, l. 137: such summaries, if not exactly of the type of the summaries used by Herodotus, the great narrator of the Greeks (V 2 (5) f), closely approximate them. Sallust uses them frequently.

**134. in decōrīs armīs, etc.:** these abls. are to be taken with the complex *lubīdinem habēbant*.

**135. habēbant:** the plu. is natural enough with the collective *iuventūs*; but the use of both sing. and plu. verbs with the same subject is unnatural and unusual. Sallust has other examples, and the construction is not unknown to Cicero. V 3 (10).

**136. virīs:** in general, this may be explained as *rēgibus*, above. The three thoughts of this sentence, however, are not related to *virīs* in exactly the same way. Probably the idea of interest, advantage, or disadvantage would cover them all better. *ūllus:* the splitting of *nūllus* into *nōn ūllus* is not only more emphatic, but retains the anaphora of the sentence. Sallust is fond of anaphora, both with words and clauses. V 2 (5) g.

**138. ipsōs** clearly refers to *virīs*, but there is no place for a direct reflexive without some ambiguity, hence this frequent substitute. §§ 86, 87.

**139. sē quisque . . . cōspicī:** see note on *sēsē student praestāre*, l. 1. The obj. clause with *properāre* is all but unknown. V 3 (1).

**140. facinus faceret:** alliteration and *figūra etymologica*. V 4 (5). *eās . . . eam:* refer to preceding clauses; we should expect *ea* but for the influence of the predicates *divitiās* and *fāmam*. § 6; V 3 (10).

**141. putābant** has for its subj. *quisque*. See note on *habēbant* above; the change here is not so violent.

**143. possem . . . fūderit . . . cēperit . . . traheret:** an unreal condition of the present with primary sequence, a construction rarely used. Cf. Plin. *Ep.* IX. 4, 1; Tib. II. 4, 7. The primary sequence seems, however, quite natural here, because the unreality is in the future.

**145.** *pūgnandō* = *oppūgnandō*: the simple verb for the compound is not unusual, especially in Sallust. § 183. *nī* is an old form; Cicero and Caesar use it in formulae and proverbs. It is used often in poetry, colloquially, in Sallust, and in later writers.

## CHAPTER 8

*Athenian deeds not commensurate with their record*  
*Roman records not commensurate with their deeds*

**147.** *ea*: *i.e.* *fortūna*.

**149.** *sicutī ego aestumō*: cf. ch. 6, *sicutī ego accēpī*, always assuming responsibility for his individual views. This is another peculiarity of the Greek narrator, Herodotus, and also of Lucian, a Greek writer of the second century A.D., who probably got it from Herodotus. V 2 (5) e.

**151.** *prōvēnēre ibi* = *blossomed out at Athens*. *scriptōrum . . . ingenia*: the English would say: *writers of marked ability*; the plu., however, indicates that Sallust meant *remarkable talents were developed at Athens among writers*.

**153.** *prō māxumīs* = a predicate apposition. *quī ea fēcēre*: this is the reading of most of the Mss. Of the more recent editors, Eussner is the only one that retains *ea*. The objection to reading *ea* is that it makes Sallust refer to the deeds of the Athenians instead of to deeds in general, as the editors think he should. Their objection is my reason for retaining it; he is still talking about the Athenians; furthermore, by retaining *ea*, we avoid the absolute use of *fēcēre*, which seems harsh here, at least. In ch. 3, which is cited for the absolute use of *facere*, one example shows the neuter use, *bene facere*, another has a cognate object. The absolute use is not frequent, and then *facere* means to act, or a cognate object may easily be supplied.

**154.** *quantum ea*: this, again, is the reading of most Mss., and of Eussner, but it is changed by other late editors to *quantum eam*. I again follow the Mss. and Eussner, because by that reading is brought out more prominently the fact that the valor or general excellence of the Athenians is great in proportion as it is so stated by their brilliant writers. *The good points of those who did these things are considered remarkable in proportion as their deeds have been lauded in words by men of great talent*. All this is borne out by contrast with what follows.

**157.** *nēmō*: decline. G. 70 E; G. (S.) 70 D; H. 513. 2; A. 314 a; B. 57. 3.

**158.** *facere quam dīcere . . . facta laudārī . . . nārrāre*: note the inf. after *quam*: cf. G. 644, R. 3 b; A. 583 c. *bene facta*: *facta* is a verbal noun, subj. of the inf., with adverbial modifier. V 2 (5) c.

## CHAPTER 9

*Roman greatness based upon intrepidity in war and equity in peace*

**164.** *suppliciis* = *supplicatiōnibus*, which is really the proper meaning, though *supplicium* is mostly used in classic prose in the transferred sense of punishment. V 1 (7).

**166.** *sēque remque : que . . . que* begins early, but was never common outside of poetry. Cicero has one example of it, *Fin.* I. 16, 51. It enters prose with Sallust. § 96; V 3 (11).

**168.** *quod in bellō . . . in pāce vērō quod* : note the reversed position of the *quod* : *in bellō . . . in pāce* stand for *in bellō ubi pāx ēvēnerit* above, and would have been written there but for Sallust's desire for rhetorical effect : simple chiasmus was not strong enough. V 2 (5).

**169.** *contrā imperium* = *against orders*.

**170.** *tardius* : *too deliberately*, with *excesserant*. *quam quī* : supply in *eōs*, between *quam* and *quī*.

**171.** *ausī erant* : what kind of a verb ? G. 167 ; H. 224 ; A. 192 ; B. 114.

## CHAPTER 10

*With prosperity come love of money and love of power — evils*

**174.** *rēgēs* : some of the conquered kings were Pyrrhus, Antiochus, Philip V, and Perseus of Macedonia.

**175.** *nātiōnēs* : Spain, Gaul, Africa, tribal perhaps, as opposed to the better organized *populī*, such as the Greeks of the home land and of *Magna Graecia*.

**176.** *Carthāgō* was destroyed by *Scīpio Africānus Minor*, 146 B.C. *imperī* : what is the accent ? G. 33, R. 1 ; H. 83, 6 ; A. 49 b ; B. 25, 2.

**179.** *optanda* has lost its gerundive force for the most part and is little more than an adj. or a perf. pass. part. See G. 426, N. 2. Cf. the same form, Sallust's *Jug.* 64, and *metuendus* as used in Sallust's *Jug.* 20. *Optanda* is neut. plu. agreeing with *ōtium* and *dīvitiae*.

**181.** *ea* : neut. plu., referring to *imperī* . . . *pecuniae cupīdō*, is equivalent to *avāritia* . . . *ambitiō*, two fem. abstracts, or simply to the two abstractions as they stand. *quasi* occurs twice in this chapter. The first occurrence is to soften or apologize for a single word (*ut ita dicam*), G. 602, N. 2 : the second is in direct comparison with the ind., where the verbs are the same and the one with *quasi* omitted ; G. 602, N. 1.

**185.** *subēgit* : the inf. after this verb is the more unusual construction.

**191.** *intolerandum* : the gerundive has become an adj. See note on *optanda*, above.

## CHAPTER 11

*Ambition and avarice led to licentiousness and intemperance under Sulla*

**196. huic** : the use of this form when we are expecting **hūc** is very striking. § 36. On **huic** and **ille** above, see § 83.

**199. venēnīs malīs** : see Harper's Lexicon, **venēnum**. Sallust is not afraid to use a word in its so-called obsolete sense. **Venēnīs** certainly means *drug* here, though it came to be used mostly in a bad sense, hence without **malum**. V 1 (7).

**205. facinora facere** : see note, l. 140. V 4 (5). **hūc accēdēbat quod** : this idiomatic Latin expression is a favorite with Sallust. On **hūc**, see § 84. On **quod habuerat**, see § 116. **Accēdere** as the virtual passive of **addere** occurs at all periods.

**209. prīmum** : carefully to be distinguished are the uses of **prīmus** as an adj. and the advs. **prīmum**, first, for the first time, and **prīmō**, at first. **Prīmum** means first in a series ; and **prīmō** first in a contrast ; but these distinctions are not always observed. G. 325, R. 7 ; cf. H. 657. 4, N. 2 ; A. 322 d and N.

**211. rapere . . . spoliāre . . . polluere** : a reference to the robberies of Greek art in the time of Sallust and before. We often think of Verres, the wholesale robber of Sicily, whom Cicero has held up to scorn as the only offender, but he is only a type. This crime was receiving higher sanction even in Sallust's day, and later on Nero was behind the movement all over the world.

**214. quippe = enim**. See G. 498, N. 8. V 2 (4) d.

**215. nē . . . temperārent** : this is generally explained as a case of **nē = nēdum** in a final clause, with the principal clause omitted. On **mōribus**, see § 71 ; on **victōriæ**, see § 33. **illī** = the soldiers.

## CHAPTER 12

*Influence transferred from virtue to riches*

**218. probro habērī . . . pro malevolentīā dūcī** : an illustration of a numerous class in Sallust of changed construction, as V 2 (5) j. **habērī . . . dūcī coepit** : in Cicero or Caesar we should probably have the passive of **coepī** with passive infins. See G. 423, N. 3 ; H. 299, 1 ; A. 205 a ; B. 133, 1. But here it is also combined with the active infin, **hebēscere**, which will explain the active, allowing for Sallust's individuality. **pro malevolentīā** : on this phrase and **probro**, see G. 340, R. 1 ; H. 410, 2 ; also G. 206, R. 1.

**220. rapere** : the subject of these infins. is to be supplied from **iuventūtem**.

**222. prōmiscua** : pred. with **pudōrem**, **pudicitiam**, **dīvina atque hūmāna**, governed by **habēre**.

**226. pietāte . . . glōriā** : bold personification.

**228. hī** : though **hī** and the preceding **illī** are used in reverse order,

syntactically, they may be considered in regular order, literally, *illī* referring to *maiōrēs*, those of more remote times, *hī* to those of nearer date.

**230. id dēmum** : strongly emphasizes *iniūriam facere* = *that and that only*.

## CHAPTER 13

*The extreme of indulgence*

**231. eīs . . . nēminī crēdibilia sunt** : see note on *cuiquam crēdibile est*, ch. 5, l. 81.

**234. quās** : its antecedent is *rēbus*, abl. of means with *abūtī*. § 72. The combination *quippe quī* introduces a causal clause. In early Latin and in Sallust the mood is ind, Cicero uses the subjunc, Livy uses both. Later the subjunc. is the rule until the time of Apuleius. G. 626, N. 1; H. 592. 2, 4; A. 535 e, N. 1. See § 126 and V 3 (13).

**235. per turpitūdinem** : to express manner, in contrast to *honestē*. § 28; V 2 (5) t.

**239. aut** : used to carry on a preceding negative, is found first in Cicero, but becomes more common later. See G. 493, 3, N. 1.

## CHAPTER 14

*Catiline surrounds himself with the basest of the base*

**245. id** : in apposition with the whole sentence. § 8.

**246. flāgitiōrum atque facinorum** : bold personification for the concrete sinners.

**247. circum sē** : G., 416. 5. *impudicus . . . pēne*. Note the reverse order of these two groups of words.

**254. cōnscius animus** = *conscience*, the telltale feeling. V 2 (5) i. *eī* : picks up what precedes by way of summary. § 85.

**256. ā culpā vacuus** : G. 374, N. 8.

**258. familiāritātēs** : Latin uses the plu. of abstract nouns more frequently than English : nouns so used often become concrete. G. 204, NN. 5 and 6; G. (S.) 204, R. 5; H. 138. 2; A. 100 c; B. 55. 4 c.

**259. etiam** is here a temporal adv. = *still*.

**266. ex aliis rēbus** : this abl. is apparently causal, since it is parallel with the causal clause, *quod . . . foret*; this is another illustration of Sallust's change of construction for variety. Cf V 2 (5) j. *cuiquam* : cf. *suprā quam cuiquam crēdibile est*, l. 81. Both sentences are virtually negative, as *cuiquam* indicates. § 91. The negative force has its effect on the subjunc., as though it were *nōn quod*, not the real reason. § 138. The case of *cuiquam* is due to the interest or advantage of the agent. *id* = *the fact* just stated.



## CHAPTER 15

*Catiline smitten because of early sins*

**268. nefanda:** cf. note on *optanda*, l. 179, and *intolerandum*, l. 191.

**269. cum . . . alia:** in a sense the *cum*-phrases and *alia* are parallel, though the *cum*-phrases really modify the complex *stupra fēcerat*, while *alia* is, like *stupra*, the object of *fēcerat*.

**273. crēditur:** the personal construction, even with the addition of *prō certō*, as we would say, *He is believed for sure to have made, etc.*

**274. nūptiis:** a simple ind. obj., rather than purpose with the thought of advantage, which belongs more to the personal end of the double dat. Cf. the English, "to prepare the house for the bride, or for the wedding."

**275. facinus mātūrandī:** the attracted gerundive form is preferred in the best Latin, though Caesar does not always use it.

**276. infēstus** is generally active in Sallust. V 2 (4) e.

**277. cōscientia:** *conscience* as opposed to consciousness is the less usual meaning of this word. *Cōnscius animus*, l. 254, is regularly used for conscience. See note.

**278. eī:** explain the case. § 35 or § 37?

## CHAPTER 16

*Catiline having made tools of all wicked men thought all things were ripe for rebellion*

**284. habēre . . . imperābat:** the inf. with its double acc. obj. is the obj. of *imperābat*, the exceptional construction, even in Sallust. G. 532, N. 1. No subject of *habēre* need be supplied; *he commanded the cheap valuation of honor, etc.* Note that *imperābat* is parallel to the hist. infins., *commodāre*, *circumvenīre*.

**287. circumvenīre, iugulāre:** these inf. are in the apod. of a cond. sent., which, though unusual, is reasonable enough, seeing that such an inf. = an impf. ind. Just eliminate the protasis here, and there is left nothing but an ordinary hist. inf.

**288. potius:** used absolutely; the obj. of comparison is implied in *grātuitō* = *for nothing*.

**290. aes aliēnum:** this is the normal position of these two words. See Harper's Lexicon under *aes*, B 1. Cf. *aliēnum aes grande*, l. 249, where the order is for convenience to accommodate *grande*.

**291. Sullānī militēs:** Sulla, who had fought against Mithridates of Pontus, between 87 and 84 B.C., had given his soldiers large tracts of land. They let it slip away, and now wanted more for nothing.

**295. in extrēmīs terrīs:** Pompey was now (64 B.C.) fighting Mithridates

in Syria. Catiline strove to take advantage of the army's absence to try a second time for the consulship (63 B.C.).

**297.** *ea*: neut. plu., by way of summary.

## CHAPTER 17

### *Catiline's conference; its personnel*

**299.** *circiter Kalendās*: chronological approximation is common in Sallust. § 81. **Lucius Caesar** was related to Caesar and Mark Antony.

**300.** *singulōs . . . temptāre*: this double chiasmic position is very common in Sallust. Antithesis and asyndeton are two of his most characteristic figures. The pairs are *singulōs*: *aliōs*, *appellāre*: *hortārī*, *aliōs*: *aliōs*, *hortārī*: *temptāre*.

**303.** *quibus* is the poss. dat. with *necessitūdō* (*erat*) and dat. of ind. obj. with *inerat*. *necessitūdō* = *need* = *necessitās*: Sallust prefers *necessitūdō*, even in the sense of *necessitās*. See below. V 1 (7).

**305.** **Lentulus Sūra**: of the family of Sulla, praetor 75 B.C. and 63 B.C.; consul, 71 B.C.; expelled from the Senate for profligacy, 70 B.C.; a noted conspirator. **P. Autrōnius**: earlier a friend of Cicero's; his crime was bribery. **L. Cassius Longīnus**: unsuccessful competitor for consulship, 63 B.C.

**308.** *ex equestrī ōrdine*: cf. *senātōriī ōrdinis*, above. The one expresses quality, the other origin. Both are in a sense descriptive and very much alike in meaning; cf. *quibus*, above, which has two dat. relations in the one word.

**309.** *ad hōc*: parallel with *praetereā*, as often. V 2 (5) h. *multī ex colōniīs*: the predicate is still *convēnēre* and the ablative is the same, in general, as *ōrdine*, above, only more literal. If *colōniīs* were *colōnīs*, we could supply *erant* as verb, and make the abl. a substitute for the part. gen.; *multī* is modified by *nōbilēs*, which is to be taken with *domī* only.

**311.** *paulō . . . nōbilēs*: *nōbilēs* is subject, with *participēs* as modifier, limited in its turn by *occultius* and a genitive.

**313.** *plēraque*: seems better taken as an adj. with *iuventūs*, instead of as an adv. See Harper's Lexicon, ad init. Sallust uses it so generally. V 2 (4) f.

**314.** *nōbilium*: best taken with *iuventūs* as appositional gen. § 44.

**315.** *prō certīs*: Sallust wishes to avoid using the *quam* construction twice in succession; this phrase balances nicely with *incerta* and seems more natural here than the *quam* construction, which has to draw upon the comparative force in *mālēbant*. V 2 (5) j.

**316.** *tempestāte = tempore*: see note on l. 127 and V 1 (7).

**318.** *ipsī . . . ductābat*: *ipsī* for *sibi* stands for the same reason the ind. does: they are part of an explanation and not an integral part of the indirect discourse. ^ 87, 127.

**319. voluisse:** supply **Crassum** as subject; the object is **opēs . . . crēscere**.

**320. sī . . . fore:** a future logical conditional in the direct discourse.

## CHAPTER 18

### *Digression — an earlier conspiracy*

**323. dē quā** refers to **coniūrātiōne**, which is to be supplied from **coniūrā-vēre**. Such ellipses can be excused in Sallust. V 2 (5) k.

**332. Nōnās:** cf. note on **Kalendās**, ch. 17, l. 299.

**337. iam tum:** see Harper's Lexicon under **iam**, I. B. 2. b. β.

**340. post conditam urbem:** see G. 360, R. 2, and compare G. 325, R. 3. Note the unusual position. **patrātum:** not used by Caesar, and rarely by Cicero. Sallust is fond of it and is probably responsible for its transfer from a colloquial to a literary use.

**341. ea rēs** = Catiline's precipitate haste.

## CHAPTER 19

### *Murder of Piso*

**343. prō praetōre:** he was sent as acting praetor, so to speak; that is, quaestor with a praetor's power. This phrase, when written together, came to be regarded as a single word, and then a nom. **prōpraetor** was wrongly deduced from it as **prōcōnsul** from **prō cōnsule**.

**345. inimicum:** best taken as predicate noun modified by **infestum**. The following dat. is dependent upon it, in its adjectival function. Cf. **reus**, above, l. 327.

**346. quippe = enim:** cf. note on l. 214.

**348. praesidium:** supply **fore**. What difference between this construction (§ 167) and **hominem . . . esse**, above (§ 169)?

**352. aliī:** supply **dicunt**: it corresponds to **sunt quī**, above, so that some feel justified in writing **sunt quī ita dicunt**. For the subjunc., see § 157.

**353. eius:** Pompeius.

**354. facinus fecisse:** see ll. 140 and 205, and notes. Besides V 4 (5), see § 14.

**355. saeva multa = multa et saeva:** Sallust may have reversed the order to avoid using the conj., but the effect is very striking. V 2 (5) l.

## CHAPTER 20

### *Catiline harangues the conspirators*

**360. in rem:** cf. Harper's Lexicon under **rēs**, II. c.

**364. in manibus** is rather less forcible than attributive to **dominātiō** = control would have been without avail (if you had not been

*previously tested*). Then take *frustrā* as a simple adv., not as predicate with *fuissent*. The verb might have been singular, because *dominatio* is little more than an appositive to *spēs*; Sallust seems to regard the one as the result of the other, hence the plural.

**365.** *per ignāviam aut vāna ingenia* = *with the help of cowardly and faithless men*. The abstract for the concrete, hence the acc. may be viewed as agency. § 29.

**366.** *incerta prō certis*: see note on the same combination, l. 315. V 2 (5) j. *multis et magnis*: see G. 481, the regular use of conjs. after forms of *multus*.

**367.** *eō*: repeats preceding clause.

**370.** *ea*: repeats preceding infin. clause and agrees with predicate by attraction; § 6. *ea dēnum*: see note on *id dēnum*, l. 230, for translation.

**372.** *sed ego quae*: note emphasis of the pronouns, one by being expressed, one by position.

**373.** *in diēs*: *every day*; see Harper's Lexicon under *diēs*, I. A. b.

**377.** *illis*: dat. with the adjective *vectigālēs*, and ind. obj. with *stipēdia pendere*. §§ 43, 31.

**387.** *vērūm enim vērō*: a striking collection of conjunctions in asyndetic Sallust.

**389.** *cōsensuērunt*: Sallust's first use of long form of perf. in *Cat.* V 2 (1).

**392.** *superāre* = *superesse*, hence with dat. See Harper's Lexicon under *superāre*, I. B. 2. See § 34 and V 1 (7).

**393-8.** *nōbīs . . . nōbīs*: explain the former by § 36, the latter by § 35.

**394.** *amplius*: see Harper's Lexicon under *amplius* at the end: "The form *amplius* has the ambiguity of the English word *more*, which is sometimes an adjective, sometimes a substantive, and sometimes an adverb."

**396.** *emunt . . . vexant*: such an indic. would not be allowed by Caesar, though it is common enough in early Latin. Sallust uses the indic. whenever he has an opportunity. See § 121 and V 3 (16).

**402.** *ēn* = *lo*: appears first in Cicero and with nom., as here.

## CHAPTER 21

### *Promises to the conspirators*

**411.** *abundē*: an infrequent use of adv. in predicate. This word is rare before Sallust, who uses it often.

**413.** *illis . . . vidēbātur*: supply *esse*. § 168.

**419.** *esse . . . petere*: indirect discourse with verb of saying implied in *pollicērī*.

**424.** *factūrum* looks to *spērāret*.

**427.** *ea* refers to *victōriae*.

## CHAPTER 22

*Catiline accused of binding conspirators by making them drink human blood and wine*

**433.** *inde = ex paterīs*: see G. 503; H. 307. 5.

**435.** *atque eō dictitāre fēcisse*: = *there are continual rumors that he did it for this reason*, etc. The Mss. give an awkward reading, but suggested changes are equally awkward, unless violence be done the text. Jacobs after Wirz simplifies to *idque eō fēcisse*.

**436.** *alius aliī*: a variation from *inter sē* for reciprocal relation. See § 24 and V 3 (17). *cōnsciī*: a natural agreement, as *alius* is the distribution of the subject of *forent*.

## CHAPTER 23

*Fulvia reveals the conspiracy: Cicero elected consul*

**443.** *homīnī* is possessive in nature. G. 349, R. 3.

**450.** *foret*: indirect discourse. The direct would be: *I shall slay you with the sword, unless you yield to me*. The apod. is implied in *ferrō*.

**456.** *plēraque*: see note on l. 313. V 2 (4) f.

**457.** *aestuābat . . . crēdebant*: see note on *habēbant*, l. 135. V 3 (10). *quasi*: G. 602, N. 2.

**458.** *quamvīs*: introduces the concessive clause represented by the adjective *ēgregius*. G. 609, N. 2. *adeptus foret* represents the fut. perf. of direct discourse. § 106.

**459.** *Post* is hardly an adv. of time, as usual, but it may be so construed for convenience, a free use in keeping with Sallust's style.

## CHAPTER 24

*Catiline, however, continues his scheming*

**463.** *minuēbātur . . . agitāre . . . parāre . . . portāre*: Sallust often changes from imperf. to hist inf., and *vice versā*, § 166 and V 3 (8). *in diēs*: see note on l. 373.

**470.** *aes aliēnum grande*: see note on l. 290; the position of the words is not altered here, as in l. 249.

## CHAPTER 25

*Sempronia, one of Catiline's female accomplices*

**477. docta**: note the triple construction, abl., inf., acc.; another example of Sallust's striving after variety. V 3 (17). Cf. also G. 339, N. 4.

**478. probae**: the dat. is an ind. obj. G. 535, R. 3.

**481. discernērēs**: potential of past is mostly in the ideal second person. § 147.

## CHAPTER 26

*Catiline, upon the failure of his plans, decides upon war*

**488. nihilō minus**: cf. G. 490, R. It follows the concessive abl. abs.

**489. sī . . . ūsūrum**: the direct discourse was a future logical condition.

**493. deerant** agrees with **astūtiae**, which is more or less explanatory of **dolus**.

**497. nē . . . sentīret**: the **nē** indicates that the subjunc. is final rather than consecutive, in spite of the leading verb. *He prevailed upon his colleague to carry out his purpose.*

## CHAPTER 27

*His cautious activity; another meeting of the conspirators*

**505. aliō**: adverb. § 94.

**507. mōlīrī**, etc.: hist. inf. are piled up here, asyndetically, too. See § 166; V 3 (8); § 186; V 4 (1). This grouping of hist. inf. is common. Cf. ch. 31, l. 568, **festīnāre**, etc.

**509. item = cum tēlō esse**; together with **aliōs** it is the object of **iubēre**.

**517. oppressisset** represents fut. perf. in direct discourse.

## CHAPTER 28

*Effort on Cicero's life frustrated; Manlius in Etruria*

**527. plēbem**: decline. G. 63, N. 1, 68. 8; G. (S.) 68. 6; A. 98 d; B. 52. 2, 59. 2 d.

## CHAPTER 29

*The matter laid before the Senate; its action*

**534. longius = diūtius**: used thus only here by Sallust. V 2 (4) g.

**538. darent**: ind. command with **ut** omitted. § 159.

**541. parāre . . . habēre**: the infins. are in apposition with the subject rather than subjects themselves.

## CHAPTER 30

*Preparations of the Senate against the rebellion*

**553.** *eī utrīque*: § 52. We expect the gen. of the pron.

**557.** *eisque*: we should expect *quibus*. Cf. *eisque*, below, l. 564.

**558.** *indicāvisset* = *indicāverit* in direct discourse. Here it is a part of the decree, which runs through the sentence.

**559.** *praemium*, with *libertātem*, etc., after *dēcrēvēre*, takes the place of a principal clause in indirect discourse.

## CHAPTER 31

*Uneasiness at Rome: Cicero's arraignment of Catiline in Senate*

**566.** *quae*: neut. plu., referring to two abstracts.

**568.** *cuiquam*: to be taken with *locō* and *hominī*: its use, except with persons, is colloquial. § 91. Cf. G. 107. 3, N. 2; H. 513. 1.

**570.** *quibus*: the dat. is the rule in Sallust and Livy. The usual construction in Cicero is with *in* plus the acc.

**573.** *rogitāre omnia omnia pavēre*: Eussner supplies an *omnia*, as Mss. have only one. It might easily have been omitted by a copyist. The sentence is much better for its presence not only syntactically, but also stylistically, by reason of the resulting chiasmus. *Rogitāre* is rare except in comedy and colloquial Latin. Sallust has still another reason for using it; it is a frequentative.

**578.** *sicut . . . foret*: the objections to *sicut iūrgiō*, the Mss. reading, do not seem well founded: the plupf. subjunc. represents a fut. perf. of the direct discourse; hence the meaning of *iūrgiō* need not be changed from an unsettled quarrel to a set speech already made or prepared. *He went to the Senate for the avowed purpose of dissembling and of freeing himself from censure, in case he should become entangled in a quarrel.* The apod. is in the purpose clause and the indirect discourse is implied.

**582.** *ut erat parātus*: there is cause here, as well as time. Cf. G. 564, N. 1.

**584.** *eā = tālī*. § 85. *ortum* agrees with *sē*, subject of *īstituisse*, which depends upon the verb of saying involved in *postulāre*.

**589.** *male dicta*: see note on *bene facta*, l. 158.

## CHAPTER 32

*Catiline departs for the camp of Manlius*

**595.** *volvēns*, etc.: *volvēns* is partly temporal, partly causal, and is followed by the causal (real) clauses, *quod . . . prōcēdebant . . . intellegēbat . . . crēdēns*: all leading up to the main verb, *profectus est*. *Quod*

has ind. because the reason is real, while **scrīberentur** and **forent** are subordinate clauses after **crēdēns**: probably the former was originally subjunc. with **priusquam** because of the characterization of the time, and the latter was subjunc. of purpose. **neque . . . et** is a rare combination in early Latin, but more common in Cicero and later. G. 480, N. 3 b. **cōsulī prōcēdēbant**: take the dat. with the verb and explain by § 37.

**601. possent**: this with the following pres. subjuncs. goes to show the freedom of sequence with hist. pres. leading verb, sometimes primary, sometimes secondary sequence. § 111.

**602. cōnfirment . . . mātūrent . . . parent**, etc.: see note on **darent**, l. 538.

### CHAPTER 33

#### *Appeal of Manlius to Roman general Quintus Marcius Rex*

**609. quō . . . utī**: a change of purpose particles for the sake of variety, especially interesting here, because **quō** without a comparative is unusual except in Sallust. § 140; V 2 (5).

**612. patriae, sed omnēs**: this or **patriā sed omnēs** is reading of the manuscripts. I retain **patriae** instead of **patriā** because variety is one of Sallust's strong points. He probably uses the following archaic ablative here just for variety, as he has used it nowhere else with this word. See G. 390. 3, N. 1; H. 465. 2.

**616. vostrum**: the possessive use of pers. prons. is unusual. See G. 101, N. 3; H. 174 sub. 4; A. 143 b and N.

**617. opitulātī sunt**: only here in Sallust. V 2 (4) h. For **inopiae**, see § 33. **propter magnitudinem** is causal in sense. See § 20 and cf. G. 408, N. 3; A. 221.

**618. aeris aliēnī**: see note, **aes aliēnum**, l. 290.

**624. simul = ūnā cum**: *together with*: see Harper's Lexicon, under **simul**, II.

**628. sanguinem nostrum = nōs**: see note on **vostrum**, above. **pereāmus**: was first deliberative, then ind. ques. after **quaerāmus**, then sub-oblique after **obtestāmur**.

### CHAPTER 34

#### *Reply of Quintus Marcius. Catiline writes to Rome that he is going into exile*

**629. sī . . . vellent . . . discēdant**: cf. note on **possent**, l. 601. Here the sequence is mixed after a hist. perf., a much rarer construction. The pres. subjunc. is probably due to an effort to retain the direct as nearly as possible. The direct is **sī . . . vultis . . . discēdite**. § 112.

**631. eā**: see note on **eā**, l. 584 and § 85.

**636. nequiverit . . . esset . . . foret . . . orerētur**: cf. note on **possent**, l. 601 and § 111. On **orerētur**, see G. 166; H. 289; A. 191; B. 123, VII.



## CHAPTER 35

*Catiline to Catulus. Plans to espouse cause of the distressed*

**643.** *L. Catilīna Q. Catulō*: supply *salūtem dīcit*: its omission indicates intimacy. This is the regular superscription of a Roman letter.

**644.** *fidūciam . . . tribuit*: for the more common *fidem facit*; probably colloquial. V 2 (5) m.

**645.** *quā ob rem*: see note on *propter magnitudinem*, l. 617.

**646.** *ex nullā cōnscentiā = nōn ex cōnscentiā*: a variation from *nōn statuī*. V 2 (5) n.

**647.** *dē culpā*: usually explained as colloquial for *culpae*: such a use is not classical, but is good in modern languages. V 2 (5) o. *mē*: supply *iuvet*. *vērā*: supply *esse*.

**648.** *licet cognōscās*: The subjunc. is concessive. See G. 607; H. 586, II and 1; A. 527 b; B. 308 a.

**650.** *prō meā cōnsuētūdine*: the abl. of respect with *prō* is unusual, but we expect the unusual, or rather the free and easy colloquial style. V 2 (5) p.

**651.** *nōn quī . . . nōn possem* differs little from *nōn quīn possem*, except that the former is better attested. *Nōn quia* would serve equally well, and has good Ms. authority. See especially G. 541, N. 2. In fact, this reading may be preferable because it is the rejected reason. § 138.

**654.** *nōn dīgnōs hominēs honōre honestātōs*: construe *nōn* with *dīgnōs*, and *honōre* with *honestātōs* to maintain the figura etymologica, though *honōre* goes more naturally with *dīgnōs*. Note the alliteration. V 4 (5).

**655.** *hōc nōmine = hāc causā*: *nōmen* is often equal to *causa* in epistolary literature. See Harper's Lexicon under *nōmen*, II. B. The abl. is causal.

**660.** *havētō* is more suitable for address than for farewell, for which *valē* is preferable, — another sign of the crudity of the letter. The fut. impv. is popular Latin; it is much used by Cicero in *De Amicitia*. V 2 (4) i.

## CHAPTER 36

*Catiline joins Manlius. The Senate declares them enemies and takes precautionary measures*

**666.** *fraude = injury, harm*, its original meaning. *licēret*: supply *eī*, referring to *multitūdīnī*, and construe also with *condemnātīs*. Its mood is due to indirect discourse.

**667.** *praeter*: adv., a rare usage in prose; never common.

**671.** *multō* = the more classical *longē* when the superlative is used. V 2 (4) j.

**672.** *maximē miserābile*: the regular superlative of adjectives in *-bilis*. V 2 (5) b.

**674.** *quae*: neut. with two abstracts, neut. and fem. *prīma*: supply *esse*.

**676.** *duōbus dēcrētis*: abl. abs. of concession = *in spite of*. § 79.

**677.** *neque . . . neque* connect the two verbs, of which *quisquam* is subj. Note the two partitive constructions with *quisquam*, *ex . . . multitudīne* (§ 80), *omnium* (§ 51).

**679.** *tanta*: Sallust seems fond of closing a paragraph thus. Cf. Herodotus and Xenophon in Greek. V 2 (5) f. *atque utī*: the objection to this use of *utī* for *velut* is so strong that most editors write *ac velutī*. *Atque utī* has the best Ms. authority and *utī* is so used elsewhere, as Tac. *Hist.* I. 46. 3, II. 94.

## CHAPTER 37

### *Sallust moralizes. Causes of disaffection*

**684.** *suō facere*: *suō* indicates that *plēbēs* is the logical subj. but *facere* is the grammatical subj. § 161. *quibus*: supply *eī* = subj. of *invident*.

**686.** *mūtārī*: see note on l. 1 for construction after *student*. § 169.

**687.** *turbā . . . damnō*: *They feed on turmoil and disturbances without worry because begging is an easy life without fear of loss.*

**688.** *ea vērō*: § 85. The construction is for strong emphasis and is common in Sallust. V 2 (5) q.

**689.** *quī ubique*: to be taken with *eī* at end of sentence, which summarizes *quī . . . praestābant, aliī, omnēs*. Beginning with l. 689, note *primum omnium quī . . . aliī . . . omnēs* followed by *deinde . . . praetereā . . . praetereā . . . ad hōc*.

**691.** *patrimōniīs āmissīs*: inserted for variety between the two relative clauses: the partic. is modified by *per dēdecora*. V 2 (5) r.

**696.** *sī . . . foret*: protasis of a future logical condition, the apodosis, *fore*, being supplied with *tālia*. The direct form would be *sī . . . erimus . . . erunt*. The omission of *fore* is not common. *Tālia* may be considered the simple obj. of *spērābat*, equivalent in sense to a clause.

**701.** *mīrandum est* has for its subj. the acc. and inf. clause. § 170.

**705.** *aliārum . . . senātūs partium*: *of other parties than the Senate's*. *Senātūs* is attrib. poss. (§ 45), *partium* pred. poss. (§ 50). The pred. gen. is for the most part confined to gens. of poss. and of quality.

**707.** *valēre ipsī*: a natural change to nom. and inf. because the subj. is the same as the subj. of *mālēbant*, and is so close to it. *id adeō*: the second occurrence of this combination in this chapter, illustrating a tendency so often observable in nearly all writers, to repeat constructions at short intervals, and in groups. *adeō* is used in Caesar as it is here.

## CHAPTER 38

*Selfish interest in the State*

**713. ita:** see note on **tanta**, l. 679. V 2 (5) f. The conclusion or summary is stated emphatically in a hist. inf., **fierī**. § 166.

## CHAPTER 39

*Political strife. Some friends of Catiline not in the conspiracy*

**726. innoxii:** this pass. use is very rare; only in Sallust in prose. V 2 (4) k.

**728. novandī:** Sallust first uses this word in the absolute sense. V 2 (3).

**729. eōrum** refers to the collective **plēbs**.

**732. quī . . . adeptī forent** is part of the unreal conditional sentence = **sī . . . adeptī forent**. § 154.

**733. quīn** depends upon **neque licuisset** = *they were prevented*: the clause is, in a sense, coördinate with **utī**, the grammatical subject of **licuisset**. § 146.

**734. quī plūs posset:** the indefinite antecedent of **quī** is subj. of **extorquēret** and probably refers to Pompeius. The indefiniteness of the antecedent is probably responsible for the subjunc. § 157.

**742. quod modo . . . foret:** though introduced by a relative, the clause is one of proviso, with **modo** followed by the subjunc. § 148.

## CHAPTER 40

*Promise of coöperation from Allobrogian deputies*

**744. sī possit:** § 159. The substantival **ut** clause and the substantival **quod** clause are just as much indirect as the acc. and inf., hence the subordinate clause takes the subjunc., which need not be explained by the hard-ridden rule of attraction.

**749. civitātium:** it is not surprising to find this form of the gen. in Sallust, since fem. consonant stems in **-tāt-** allow **-ium** as well as **-um** in the gen. plu. G. 38. 2, cf. 48, R., 54; H. 104-106; A. 70, 71; B. 40. **nōtus erat . . . nōverat:** when the perf. of resulting condition is translated by an English pres. (§ 104), the plupf. is translated by an English impf. G. 241, R.

**751. quasi:** see note on l. 181; also G. 602, N. 3.

**752. exitum:** supply **futūrum esse** (fore), or is it a simple appositive to **quem**, direct obj. of **spērarent**? **malis . . . miseriis:** § 37.

**756. ratiōnem . . . quā** = **quā ratiōne**.

**759. quod . . . factūrī essent . . . liberāret:** the subjunc. was probably

original in both clauses, the one characteristic of result (§ 157), the other a proviso (§ 148); *quod . . . faciāmus . . . liberet*.

**760.** *in domum . . . ab Rōmā*: §§ 19 and 63; the prep. can be used with *domum* because of the gen. modifier, with *Rōmā* for the sake of greater exactness (rare in model prose), or because it is, in a sense, the place from which distance is measured.

**761.** *aliēna cōnsilī*: We should expect the dat., or possibly the abl. for *aliēna* is not a substantive here. See § 43, and cf. G. 359, N. 2. In any case, the gen. is rare; probably Sallust wrote the gen. since he could, to emphasize the contrast, the other extreme being dat.

#### CHAPTER 41

*The Allobrogians remain true to the State and play false with Catiline*

**777.** *quam maxumē manifēstōs*: the regular superlative is in use. V 2 (5) b. *manifēstus* used for persons is the exception. V 2 (4) l.

#### CHAPTER 42

*Commotion in Hither and Farther Gaul*

**778.** *īsdem . . . temporibus*: cf. l. 738 for the same; the plural is surprising. V 2 (4) m.

**781.** *cūncta . . . omnia*: is there reason for change here except variety? V 2 (5).

#### CHAPTER 43

*Assignment of duties to different conspirators*

**790.** *cum . . . vēnisset* was probably *vēnerit* (pf. subj.) in the direct discourse or even fut. perf. ind.

**795.** *divisa*: supply *esse*. § 168.

**800.** *alius autem alium*: supply *aggrederētur*. *familiārum*: for the usual *familiās* (sing.). G. 29, R. 1; H. 79. 2; A. 43 b; B. 21. 2 a. The sing. could hardly have been used here, because many families were involved.

**806.** *sī paucī . . . factūrum*: a future logical condition in direct discourse = *sī paucī adjuvābunt . . . faciam*.

#### CHAPTER 44

*The Allobrogians help Cicero*

**811.** *conveniunt*: the active use. V 2 (4) n.

**814.** *dant*: supply *iūs iūrandum*.

**819. ad Catilinam:** the acc. is terminal in nature. See § 19 and cf. G. 345; R. 2; H. 426. 5; N.; A. 363. 2; B. 358. 2.

**820. exemplum infrā scriptum est:** cf. l. 641, a set phrase.

**821. quī:** the adjectival form of the interrogative, = **quis**. Cf. G. 106, R.; H. 184. 3; A. 148 b and N.; B. 90. 2 b and c. V 2 (4) o. Such a use in such a letter is not so startling.

**823. cōsiderēs . . . petās:** to be taken as independent impv. subjuncs.; they may be conceived as going with **fāc**, with a different punctuation.

## CHAPTER 45

### *Volturcius and the Allobrogians arrested at the Mulvian Bridge*

**829. cūncta:** the acc. of thing with the pass. § 21.

**832. utī . . . agant:** **utī . . . sit** is taken as subordinate clause in substantial **ut** clause, though the subjunc. may have been original in an imaginary comparative sentence. The **ut** with **agant** is omitted, which does not often happen after **permittere**, except in Sallust and Livy, though here the presence of **utī** may excuse the omission. The tenses are primary after hist. pres. § 111.

**841. velut hostibus:** as if to an enemy, showing an actual state of war.

## CHAPTER 46

### *The conspiracy disclosed. The leaders summoned*

**849. perdundae reī pūblicae:** the double dat. construction attracted from **perdundō reī pūblicae** seems a much more natural explanation than the gen. of quality.

**853. cēterī:** This method of stating first what everybody else did and then what one person in particular did, is a peculiarity of Greek historians, especially Herodotus and Xenophon. V 2 (5) s. **Caeparius:** an adversative conjunction is expected here. See § 186 and V 4 (1).

## CHAPTER 47

### *Taking of testimony. The leaders condemned to confinement*

**870. praeter litterās:** a comparison is expressed here. See G. 296, N. 3; H. 471. 5; A. 407 e, N. The last two references are to use with comparatives rather than with positives.

**872. Cinnam atque Sullam:** supply **fuisse**.

**873. urbis:** **potior** has the gen. at all periods. See G. 407, N. 2 d; H. 477. 3; A. 410 a; B. 218. 1 a. It is common in Sallust and later writers. **ab incēnsō Capitōliō:** see note on **post conditam urbem**, l. 340.

## CHAPTER 48

*Effort to implicate Crassus in the conspiracy*

**886.** *agitābat*: an impf. ind. parallel with hist. inf., as often. V 2 (2).

**887.** *alia*: see note on *cēterī*, l. 853. V 2 (5) s.

**888.** *maxumē calamitōsum*: another instance where Sallust avoids a long superlative, by using *maxumē*. V 2 (5) b.

**894.** *data esset*: fut. perf. of direct discourse in a future logical condition.

**895.** *quae*: grammatically the obj. of *docuit*, understood, though it is unnecessary to supply it. Let *quae* = *atque*, which is also used after *idem*.  
**dē parātīs incendiīs**: *regarding the preparations for the fires.*

**899.** *dēprehēnsī*: the seizure of Lentulus, etc., terrifies him. *eōque*: *que* is adverbative in sense.

**900.** *quō . . . reficeret . . . ēriperentur*: both subjuncts. express purpose, both have *quō*, the one with (§ 139), the other without (§ 140), a comparative. V 3 (12).

**903.** *vērū*: supply *esse*, also the subj. *id*, which refers, as *rem*, above, to the fact concerning Crassus.

**906.** *conclāmant*: the subj. is *omnēs*, understood, which is distributed by *aliī . . . pars . . . plērīque*. V 2 (5) d.

**907.** *eā rē*: proleptically the subj. of *referātur*, as is, above, l. 893, is subj. of *diceret*.

**910.** *potestātem*: supply *indicandī* from *indicāret*, below. *indicāret*: *You cannot testify unless it be concerning the man by whose advice you told such a lie.*

**915.** *aiēbant*: twice in this chapter not parenthetically as it is commonly used.

**917.** *praedicantem*: while this may be taken as an attributive partic. of time with *Crassum*, it is probably better explained as a pred. after *Crassum* depending on *audīvī*. § 175.

## CHAPTER 49

*A similar effort to implicate Caesar*

**925.** *ex petitiōne*: abl. of separation in time.

**928.** *privātim . . . publicē*: these advs. modify the causal abls. which may be easily resolved into causal clauses.

**930.** *impellere nequeunt*: cf. *impellere quivēre*, the affirmative above, l. 920.

**931.** *quae . . . audīsse dicerent* = *quae audissent*: *what (they claimed they) had heard*. Wishing to emphasize the obliquity, Sallust puts in the

verb of saying in the subunc. so that what would be the subunc. must be infin. after the verb of saying. Cf. G. 541, N. 3, 585, N. 3, 630, N. 3.

## CHAPTER 50

*What must be done with the prisoners*

**953. sī dēprehēnsī forent:** to be taken with what precedes. Silanus was asked what he would do concerning Crassus, etc., if they should be seized (fut. perf. ind. in direct discourse). If taken with what follows, it would still be subunc. in indirect discourse, representing fut. perf. in direct discourse.

**955. pedibus in sententiam . . . itūrum:** refers to the custom of voting by walking to one side or the other—*he would go over to the side of Nero*. A somewhat similar practice prevails in the English Parliament at what is called a "division."

**956. referendum** (supply *esse*) is impersonal.

## CHAPTER 51

*Caesar's speech for moderation and control*

**963. illa: i.e. odiō,** etc., above. **officiunt:** used absolutely. V 2 (3). **omnium:** forceful, hence not superfluous.

**966. quī rēgēs:** this, which is the Ms. reading, makes perfectly good sense, and avoids the infrequent use of the cognate acc. **quae** with **cōsulō**. **quī** is interrog. adj.

**976. per indūtiās:** being coördinated with **in pāce**, it expresses time within which. See § 65 and cf. G. 393, R. 1; cf. H. 487. 2; A. 424 a; it is probably used by Sallust for variety. V 2 (5) k. **nefāria facinora fēcissent:** see note on **facinus faceret**, l. 140.

**977. per occāsiōnem:** *when occasion offered.* § 28.

**982. irae . . . cōsulātis:** can be taken together only, in conjunction with **fāmae**, by zeugma. See § 191 and V 4 (6).

**983. prō factis:** abl. of respect; see § 68 and cf. G. 397, NN. 1 and 2. See also V 2 (5) p. Whether this is respect or not, the expression **dīgnus prō** is unusual; it may be colloquial, cf. Ter., *Hec.* 209.

**985. ūtendum:** used impersonally; supply *esse nōbīs*.

**990. familiārum:** see note on **familiārum**, l. 800.

**995. scīlicet:** ironical.

**997. gravius . . . habuēre:** but for Sallust's unusual fondness for **habēre**, we should probably have **tulēre** here, for that is the usual idiom.

**1001. sciunt:** its object is antecedent of **quī**; or might it be simply *id*?

**1016. aliēna ā rē publicā:** see G. 359, N. 2. The abl. indicates separation.

**1026.** *animadvorteretur*: impersonal construction.

**1027.** *civibus*: ind. obj. of the loser with *ēripī*, § 32; ind. obj. of the gainer with *permittī*, § 31.

**1030.** *sīn* is really without a verb; supply *est* = *but if it is because* . . .

**1031.** *quī*: interrog. adv., an old abl. form expressing manner.

**1032.** *neglēgeris*: old form for *neglēxeris*. V 1 (7).

**1033.** *at enim*: *but sooth*, a startling transition indicated by the particle and the question.

**1034.** *tempus* = a general term indicating inevitable change; *diēs* = an advance. The predicate with these words is supplied from *reprehendet*.

**1038.** *eius*: refers to *imperium*.

**1040.** *dēvictis Athēniēnsibus*: construe as dat. with *imposuere* and translate, *The Lacedaemonians subdued the Athenians and placed over them thirty men to manage their affairs.* § 178.

**1043.** *omnibus invisum*: used as *pessimum* with *quemque*, and equally universal. *indemnatum* is concessive. *ea* is obj. of *laetari* and subj. of *feri* after *dicere*.

**1046.** *laetitiae*: obj. gen. following *poenās*. § 47.

**1058.** *temporibus*: here means times of this kind, which may explain the plural. Cf. note on l. 778. *multa et varia*: see notes on ll. 355 and 366.

**1059.** *tempore* . . . *cōnsule*: abl. of time, though the temporal notion of *cōnsule* can arise only from its being abl. abs., or by taking *cōnsul* as a symbol for time in Roman dating.

**1061.** *hōc*: 1st pers. refers to the precedent of which Caesar is speaking.

**1064.** *umquam eguere*: the perfect is strongly accentuated by the *umquam*. The gen. with this verb, as here, is the rule in Sallust.

**1070.** *bonis* is obj. of both *imitari* and *invidere*, but regulates its case by the nearest.

**1074.** *circumveniri* . . . *feri coepere*: by carrying the subordinate clause through *coepere*, as *tum* indicates should be done, *circumveniri* becomes pass. inf. with *coepere*, as in l. 218. See note there. *Fieri*, likewise, is passive, in sense. These examples go to show that Sallust does not follow the rule.

**1075.** *lēgibus*: though this repetition of antecedent with the relative is a favorite construction of Caesar's, there is no reason for supposing that Sallust is here imitating Caesar, for the rest of the speech does not indicate such imitation.

**1076.** *hanc* is naturally placed first; its very great importance here is indicated by its use with and before the emphatic *ego*, the very expression of which makes it emphatic; supply *esse*. *causam* . . . *magnam*: the cause is one of hindrance, hence the following *quō minus* with subjunc. § 142.



**1080.** *in nōbīs*: a variation from *illīs*, preceding. V 2 (5) u.

**1082.** *cēnseō*: here followed both by acc. with inf. and *ut* with subjunc.; indirect statement and indirect command, almost without distinction, since the pass. periphrastic expresses the necessity as much as the command. The last inf. is clearly indirect statement.

**1085.** *fēcerit*: probably perf. subjunc. representing fut. perf. ind. of direct discourse.

## CHAPTER 52

### *Cato's speech in reply to Caesar*

**1095.** *ab illīs*: *cavēre* governs the dat. of an ind. obj. when meaning *to take precautions for*, and the acc., or *ab* or *dē* with the abl., meaning *to take precautions against*, and the simple abl., meaning simply *to beware of*. See G. 346, N. 2; H. 426. 4, N.

**1097.** *persequāre . . . implōrēs*: ideal 2d pers.; and they carry with them *prōvīderīs*. § 147.

**1110.** *fēcissem*: the plupf. in relation to *condōnābam* below, is iterative. § 107. *alterius* = neighbor. § 94. *lubīdīnī . . . condōnābam*: the dat. is ind. obj. rather than reference; to be taken under, § 34. *male facta*: see note on *bene facta*, l. 158. V 2 (5) c.

**1120.** *sint . . . largiantur . . . eant*: the affirmative verbs are best taken as concessive, but strongly ironical, § 133; the negative as hortatory, § 131.

**1126.** *crēdō*: used parenthetically.

**1127.** *malōs . . . habēre*: in apposition with *quae . . . memorantur. ā bonīs*: construed with *dīvorsō*, to show separation between bad and good.

**1128.** *taetra . . . formīdulōsa*: a favorite form of asyndeton with Sallust closing with *atque*.

**1130.** *sī . . . sint . . . ēripiantur*: this is an ideal condition, hence *sint* and *ēripiantur* are more largely influenced by the condition than by the secondary sequence of the fearing clause; the conditional sentence is responsible for the apparent *repraesentātiō*. §§ 153, 143. Take *censuit* as pure perfect and all difficulty vanishes.

**1138.** *habētōte*: see note on *havētō*, l. 660. This fut. impv. occurs in a fut. logical condition. It is generally explained as fut. for pres., with this verb meaning *to consider*.

**1141.** *sī*: supply *sed* or *autem*, adversative asyndeton.

**1145.** *nōs*: the frequency with which the pers. pron. is used in this speech is striking, though it is to be expected in speeches and letters. *quippe* = *enim*: see G. 498, N. 8; V 2 (4) d.

**1148.** *nūlla*: a literal translation is awkward. It is colloquially more common than *nōn*. V 2 (4) p.

**1158. incendere**: this is a free use of the obj. inf. § 162.

**1160. suprā caput**: the metaphor indicates an impending danger close at hand, as from a rock over the head.

**1161. dēprēnsīs hostibus**: many examples, both of the dat. and of the abl., are found with **faciō**, hence this may be either; if dat., it is ind. obj., or strongly personal; if abl., it is means or an abl. abs. equivalent to a conditional clause. I prefer the dat.; **dē** with abl. is found also; so with **statuō** farther on in this chapter, l. 1176.

**1162. misereāminī . . . dīmīttātis**: apod. of ideal condition (§ 153), with unexpressed protasis, implied in preceding question. Or are these verbs governed by **cēseō**, in partial indirect discourse? The whole is strongly ironical. **per ambitiōnem**: the poor young fellows have been led astray by ambition, a polite sneer.

**1163. nē** is prohibitive = *take care lest*. **Ista** is 2d pers., as usual. § 83.

**1165. convortat** is intrans.; rarely so found. **scīlicet**: strongly ironical, in keeping with most of the speech.

**1166. maxumē**: supply **timētis eam**, from above.

**1172. trādideris . . . implōrēs**: ideal 2d pers. of iterative action. See §§ 106, 107, and 147. **irātī**: supply **nam**, strong asyndeton. § 186 and V 4 (1).

**1177. vidēlicet**: irony again.

**1187. aliī . . . hostēs**: unusually emphatic order.

## CHAPTER 53

*Sallust's reflections upon Roman greatness, called forth by the speeches of Caesar and Cato*

**1199. aliī . . . aliōs**: refer to **increpantēs** and **timidōs vocant** respectively: *each party upbraids and calls the other faint-hearted*: **aliī** and **aliōs** have their usual force.

**1203. mari atque terrā** = **terrā marīque**, the usual combination. This is a strained effort after variety, a change from **domī militīaeque**. V 2 (5) v.

**1204. facinora fēcit**: see V 4 (5). This is why **facinora** is far removed from **multa**.

**1206. contēdisse**: supply **populum Rōmānum**, an unusual omission of subj.; cf. **tolerāvisse**, below, l. 1208. **cognōveram**: see note on **nōtus erat** . . . **nōverat**, l. 749.

**1218. obtulerat . . . fuit**: epistolary tenses do not seem to be at all out of place here, though this is not a letter, unless we conceive of the whole work as a large letter. § 108.

**1219. quīn . . . aperīrem**: the subjunc. here is consecutive in character; **quīn** = **ut nōn**. See § 146 and cf. G. 556; H. 595. 3, 4; A. 559, N.

## CHAPTER 54

*Caesar and Cato compared*

**1221. genus:** Caesar traced his lineage back to Iulus, son of Aeneas; Cato made his own name; both are imperishable. **aetās:** Caesar was five years older than Cato. **eloquentia:** Caesar's only superior in oratory was Cicero; Cato was not in the same class. Sallust here shows himself magnanimous toward Cato, especially as Caesar had been his patron and best friend.

**1222. alia aliī:** each had a different kind of renown. The dat. is poss. We should expect *altera alterī*, as only two are involved.

**1231. quod . . . esset:** implied indirect discourse.

**1232. posset:** subjunctive of implied indirect discourse, *where he (Caesar, not Sallust) believed his worth could shine forth.*

**1234. divitiīs . . . abstinentiā:** a most interesting chiasmic grouping. See § 187 and V 4 (2).

## CHAPTER 55

*The conspirators put to death*

**1241. nē . . . novārētur:** the subjunc. is final in character, not pure purpose, but following the preceding notion of prevention. § 142. **quid** might be termed cognate nominative with a passive verb. § 90.

**1253. exitium = end,** archaic for **exitum.** V 1 (7).

## CHAPTER 56

*Catiline gets his forces ready but avoids battle*

**1263. aliī:** probably an **aliī** has been lost before **sparōs**, unless it means that all the rest carried spears and lances, while some carried also sharpened sticks, which is not likely.

**1265. vorsus:** adverb (really a participle) from **vortō** in its regular construction, with **in** or **ad** and the acc. of end.

**1267. prope diem:** taken separately or together = an adv.

**1268. patrāvissent** represents fut. perf. of logical condition in direct discourse. **cuius:** supply **generis**, the most natural explanation for this unusual singular relative with plural antecedent; otherwise we should have to explain it as referring to **servitia** as a class, which is much more difficult; the gen. is construed with **cōpiae**.

**1270. alienum:** supply **esse**. It governs naturally the dat., as here, though the abl. with or without **ab** is found. Cf. G. 359, N. 2. § 43.

## CHAPTER 57

*Catiline hemmed in*

**1286.** *utpote quī . . . sequerētur*: Sallust prefers *quippe quī* with the ind. in similar passages. The subj. is causal. Cf. G. 626, N. 1; H. 592. 1; A. 535. e, N. 1; B. 283. 3. *expeditō*: explained by *in fugā*: light-armed, for quick action in case of Catiline's flight. The most common reading is *impeditōs*. *Impeditus tardātōs* is suggested.

**1291.** *quam primum*: one of many examples in Sallust and everywhere. The superlative is strengthened by *multō, longē, vel, ūnus, ūnus omnium*. *Quam* (with or without a form of *possum*) and the superlative is the regular form for *as . . . as possible*. G. 303 and R. 1; H. 159. 2; A. 291 c; B. 240. 3.

## CHAPTER 58

*Catiline's speech to his soldiers before the battle*

**1298.** *hortēre*: ideal 2d pers. § 147.

**1305.** *ūnus . . . alter*: this variation from *alter . . . alter* is common enough in all literature. *alter* = *second*. § 94.

**1306.** *sī . . . ferat*: the condition is concessive, *sī* meaning *even if*. See G. 591. 2.

**1310.** *proelium inībitis*: the acc. with this verb was probably originally terminal, but in a case like this it may be looked upon as a direct obj. of the verb with the meaning *join or begin*.

**1312.** *vincimus*: the present for future here is forcible.

**1313.** *abundē*: see note, l. 411.

**1315.** *amīcus quisquam*: either *amīcus* is to be taken as an adj., which is not likely here, or *quisquam* is used for its regular adj., *ullus*; see § 91. Cf. *quisquam cīvis*, l. 1390.

**1316.** *et*: for the more usual *quam* or *ac* after *eadem*. G. 643 and N. 2.

**1318.** *illīs . . . pūgnāre*: a compact sentence meaning that they need not fight so hard, seeing that they do not fight for themselves, but for the power of a few.

**1319.** *aggrediāminī memorēs*: an impv. of verb *esse* must be supplied with *memores* if *aggrediāminī*, which has the best Ms. authority, be read instead of *aggrediminī*, which some editions retain.

**1322.** *intoleranda*: supply *esse* and construe the sentence by § 168.

**1325.** *cum arma . . . āvorteris*: an unusual expression for *when you have fled*.

**1333.** *sī . . . invīderit*: an unusual way of saying *if you shall be defeated*.

## CHAPTER 59

*A picture of the two opposing forces*

**1343.** *aspera* : supply *loca* and construe with *inter*.

**1352.** *permittit*, etc. : this series of hist. presents effectively indicates rapidity of action.

**1357.** *inermōs* : except in the nom., Sallust prefers the 2d declension forms of this word.

## CHAPTER 60

*Catiline's obstinate fight and worthy death*

**1369.** *vorsārī . . . exsequēbātur* : here vividness is sought by the series of hist. infins., and the change to the impf. in closing, a favorite trick of Sallust's.

**1378.** *fūsās . . . relīctum* : are these partic. or must *esse* be supplied ? § 175 or § 167 ?

## CHAPTER 61

*Reflections upon the fight*

**1381.** *tum vērō* : very emphatic repetition of *cōnfectō proeliō*.

**1383.** *vīvos*, etc. : note the antitheses in this sentence : *vīvos* and *āmissā anima*, *pugnandō* and *corpore*, *cēperat* and *tegēbat*. *locum* : though incorporated in the relative clause, it is far removed from the relative. § 9.

**1385.** *paulō dīvorsius* : to be taken with *conciderant*.

**1391.** *ita . . . pepercerant* : an excellent illustration of how Sallust tries to say things oddly and differently from other people ; the meaning is : *All had spared their own lives no more than the lives of the enemy*. It is also a characteristic summary. V 2 (5) f. Cf. *ita . . . agitābantur* below, l. 1398. This last sentence also has Sallust's favorite form of asyndeton, closing with *atque* (§ 186, and V 4 (1)), and at the very end a frequentative verb, V 2 (2). It may be that this grouping of peculiarities was accidental.

## SYNTACTICAL APPENDIX

### AGREEMENT

1. Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the plural. Sometimes also such words as *quisque*, *uterque*, *nēmō*, etc., on the principle of partitive apposition; *e.g.*, They did it *each one*. \* G. 211, R. 1, exc. a; H. 389; A. 317. d, e, and N.; B. 254. 4. a.

2. Two abstracts in combination, when conceived as a unit, take a singular verb. G. 285, exc. 2; H. 392. 4; A. 317. b. N.; B. 255. 3.

3. The singular is used with two or more subjects which are conceived as acting independently. G. 285, exc. 3 and NN.; H. 392. 1; A. 317. c.

4. A singular subject combined with another word by *cum*, *with*, is treated properly as a singular. Sallust, Livy, and later writers often treat it as a plural. G. 285, N. 2; H. 389. 4; A. 317, N.

5. When the subjects are feminine abstracts, the predicate adjective may be neuter plural. G. 286. 3; H. 395. 2 and N.; A. 287. 4. a; B. 235. B. 2. a.

6. Demonstrative pronouns are often attracted into the gender of the predicate. G. 211, R. 5; H. 396. 2; A. 296. 2. a.

7. The gender and number of the relative pronoun may be determined by the sense, and not by the form; by the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent.

When the relative refers to combined antecedents of different genders, the strongest gender is preferred, or the nearest; generally the masculine if the antecedents denote persons, otherwise the neuter. G. 614, R. 3 and R. 5; H. 396, 396. 2, 398. 1; A. 305, 306 and N.; B. 250.

8. When the relative refers to a sentence, *id quod*, *that which*, is commonly used, or *quae rēs*, or simple *quod*. G. 614, R. 2; H. 399. 6; A. 307. d and N.; B. 247. 1. b.

\* G. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; G.(S.) = Gildersleeve-Lodge, School Edition; H. = Harkness; A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett.

9. The antecedent substantive, the appositional substantive, and adjectives, especially superlatives, are often incorporated in the relative clause. G. 616; H. 399 and 3; A. 307. a and b; B. 251. 4.

10. Superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then *generally* precede their substantives. Such are **summus**, **primus**, etc. Similarly **medius**, **reliquus**, **cēterus**. G. 291, R. 2; H. 497. 4; A. 293; B. 241. 1.

11. The Latin often uses an adjective where the English idiom employs an adverb or an adverbial phrase. G. 325, R. 6; H. 497; A. 290; B. 239.

## THE SYNTAX OF NOUNS

### *The Accusative Case*

12. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative case. G. 330, 331; H. 404; A. 387; B. 172-174.

13. Neuter pronouns and adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive notion that lies in the verb. G. 333. 1; H. 409. 1; A. 390. c; B. 176. 2.

14. Even intransitive verbs admit the accusative of an object of kindred origin, usually with an attribute. G. 333. 2; H. 409; A. 390; B. 176. 4.

15. Sometimes the cognate accusative is not of kindred etymology, but merely of kindred meaning. This usage, however, is rare and mainly poetical. G. 333, N. 2; cf. H. 409 and 2; cf. A. 390. a, b, d; B. 176. 4. a.

16. The accusative of extent in degree is confined to neuter adjectives and pronouns used substantively, **multum**, **plūs**, **tantum**, **quantum**, etc. G. 334. In many instances this is felt more as an adverb than as a substantive. Other grammarians so classify.

17. The accusative, with or without **per**, is used to express extent in both place and time. G. 335, 336; H. 417; A. 423. 2, 425; B. 181.

18. The accusative following **post** or **ante** may be used to express the measure of time before or after, *e g.* **Post ducentōs annōs** = **Ducentis annīs post**. G. 403, N. 4. a, b, f; G. (S) 403 and R.; H. 417. 3; A. 424. f.

19. Direction toward is expressed by the accusative with a preposition, **ad** or **in**, except with towns and small islands, **rūs**, *to the country*, **domum**, **domōs**, *home*, where the accusative alone is used. If the name

of the town is accompanied by an appositive *urbem* or *oppidum*, the appositive takes the preposition. The name of the town is often accompanied by the name of the country or some other word *with a preposition*. *Ad* with the accusative, even of towns, expresses *proximity* or *vicinity*. This rule is not limited to verbs of motion, but includes verbs of action, a very large class. G. 337 and RR.; H. 418, 419; A. 426. 2, 427. 2; B. 182. 1, 2, etc.

The rules already given illustrate the *inner object*. The following rules illustrate the *outer object*, or both combined.

**20.** The accusative of respect, or so-called Greek accusative, as illustrated by the following: *Percussa novā mentem formīdine*, is rare in early Latin: it was introduced into prose by Sallust and extended. The indefinite form, as seen in *cētera, alia, reliqua*, etc., is found occasionally at all periods. G. 338 1, 2 and N. 1; H. 416; A. 390. N., 397. b; B. 175. 2. d, 176. 2. b and 3.

**21.** Verbs signifying *to ask, demand, teach, conceal*, etc., take two accusatives, one of the person, one of the thing. In the passive the accusative of the person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing remains, except with *cēlārī*, when the order is generally reversed. Many of the verbs take also *dē* with the ablative, some *ab* with the ablative, and *quaerō* takes *ex, ab*, or *dē*. G. 339 and RR. and NN.; H. 411; A. 396; B. 178.

Verbs of asking, denoting, etc., *doceō, iubeō, vetō, sinō*, take the infinitive or a clause as a second accusative. G. 423, N. 6; H. 411. 3; B. 331. 6.

**22.** Verbs of *naming, making, taking, choosing, showing*, etc., may have two accusatives of the same person or thing.

*Habeō*, meaning *to regard*, takes, instead of the predicate accusative, the dative, or the ablative with *in* or *prō*, or the genitive with *locō, numerō*, or *in numerō*. In the passive both accusatives become nominative.

The end with verbs of *taking* and *choosing* is indicated by the dative, or by *ad* with the accusative. G. 340 and RR.; H. 410 and 2 and 3; A. 393 and N.; B. 177 and 2.

**23.** The accusative with or without an interjection, *heu, ō*, or *prō*, is used in exclamations as the general object of thought, perception, or emotion. G. 343. 1 and NN.; H. 421; A. 397. d; B. 183.

**24.** The accusative of the personal pronouns, *nōs, vōs, sē*, with *inter*



is used to express reciprocal relations. G. 221; H. 502, 1; A. 145. c, 301. f; B. 245.

25. The accusative with **ante**, **praeter**, and **suprā** is often found as a substitute for **quam** or the ablative in comparison. G. 296, N. 3; H. 471. 5; A. 407. e. N.

26. The accusative with **in**, **ergā**, **adversus** is used to express the *object towards which* with adjectives of *friendliness* or *hostility*, with **ad** to express the *object for which* with adjectives of *fitness* and *use*. G. 359, RR. 2 and 3; H. 435. 1; A. 385. a and b; B. 192. 2, N.

27. The accusative, instead of the dative, is used with some adjectives and adverbs of *nearness* in time or place, **prope**, **propius**, **proximē**, **propior**, **proximus**, **prīdiē**, **postrīdiē**. G. 359, N. 1; H. 435. 2; cf. 420. 5; A. 432. a and N.; B. 141. 3.

28. The accusative with **per** sometimes denotes *manner*. G. 399, N. 1; H. 474. 1, N.; A. 221. 16. d.

29. The person through whom, or the person used as an *instrument*, is put in the accusative with **per**. G. 401 and R.; cf. 416. 18; H. 468. 3; cf. 509. 2; A. 405. b; cf. 221. 16. c.

30. The accusative with **per** is used in *adjurations*, but **per** is usually separated from its case. G. 413, N. 2; H. 676. 2.

#### *Dative Case*

31. The indirect object is put in the dative with transitive verbs, which already have a direct object in the accusative. G. 345; H. 424; A. 362; B. 187. I.

32. Some transitive verbs of *taking away* compounded with **dē** and **ex** (rarely with **ab**) take the dative, which is really an indirect object, the dative of the loser. G. 347, R. 5; H. 428. 2; cf. 427; A. 381 and N.; B. 188. 2. d.

33. The indirect object is put in the dative with many intransitive verbs of *advantage* or *disadvantage*, *yielding* or *resisting*, etc. G. 346; H. 426; A. 367, 368; B. 187. II. a.

34. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob** (**post**), **prae**, **sub**, **super**, take the dative of the indirect object.

Such compounds, if transitive, have an accusative case besides. G. 347; H. 429; A. 370; B. 187. III.

35. The dative of the *possessor* is used with the verb **sum**.

With *nōmen est* the name is more often attracted into the dative case. G. 349; H. 430; A. 373; B. 190.

36. The dative of *possessor* is also used with *abesse* and *dēesse*. G. 349, R. 4; A. 373. b.

37. The dative of *personal interest* includes: the person in whose honor or interest or advantage an action is taken, or the reverse; the ethical dative, which indicates special interest in the action and is confined to the personal pronouns; and the person in whose eyes the statement of the predicate holds good. G. 350-352; H. 425. 4 and N., 432; A. 376-380; B. 188. 1, 2. a, b, c.

38. The passive of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally; verbs which in the active are construed with the dative are regularly used impersonally in the passive; *mihi invidētur*. Cf. *taedet*, etc. G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6; A. 208. d; B. 138, 256. 3.

39. The dative is used with passive verbs, in prose chiefly with the perfect passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result. That the person interested is the agent is only an inference. G. 354 and NN.; H. 431. 2; A. 375; B. 189. 2 and 3.

40. The agent of the gerund and gerundive is put in the dative at all periods.

Here, of course, must be included the passive periphrastic conjugation. G. 355; cf. 215. 2; H. 431; A. 374 and a; B. 189. 1.

41. Certain verbs take the dative of the *object for which* (to what end), and often at the same time a dative of the *personal object for whom*, or *to whom*, e.g., *esse, dare, dūcere, habēre* (in the passive), *vertere*, etc.

Later Latin extends the usage, especially to gerundive constructions. This includes the double dative and the so-called dative of purpose. G. 356 and RR.; H. 433; A. 382; B. 191.

42. A few derivative substantives take the dative of their primitives. G. 357; H. 436; A. 367. d.

43. Adjectives of *likeness, fitness, friendliness, nearness*, and the like, with their opposites take the dative.

Many adjectives which belong to this class are used also as substantives, and as such are construed with the genitive, e.g. *amīcus*.

Note especially for Sallust *adversus* with the genitive and *intentus* with the ablative. G. 359 and RR. and NN. 1 and 5; H. 434; cf. 435; A. 383-385; B. 192; cf. 204. 2 and a. 3.

*The Genitive Case*

**44.** The genitive is sometimes used by way of *apposition* or *explanation*. G. 361. 1 and 2; H. 440. 4; A. 343. d; B. 202.

**45.** The possessive genitive is the substantive form of an adjective attribute with which it is often parallel: it is used only of the third person.

The possession in the first and second person (and in the reflexive) is indicated by the possessive pronouns. G. 362 and R. 1; H. 440. 1 and 2; A. 343 and a; B. 198.

**46.** When the substantive on which a genitive depends contains the idea of an action, the relation may be active or subjective.

This subjective genitive embraces nearly all genitives except the objective. G. 363. 1; H. 440. 1; A. 343 and N. 1; B. 199.

**47.** When the substantive on which a genitive depends contains the idea of an action, the relation may be passive or objective. The genitive receives the action. G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2; A. 347; B. 200.

**48.** The subjective genitive is used only of the third person: use the possessive pronoun for first and second person.

The personal pronouns, *meī*, *tui*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, are used objectively. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used partitively. G. 364 and R. and N. 2; H. 500. 4; A. 295. b; B. 242. 2.

**49.** The genitive modified by an adjective is used to denote *quality*, being used chiefly of essentials, always of number, measure, time, space. G. 365 and R. 2; H. 440. 3; A. 345; B. 203.

**50.** The genitives of *possession* and *quality* may be used as predicates. G. 366; H. 447; cf. 439. 3-5; A. 343. b; B. 198. 3, 203. 5.

**51.** The *partitive* genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs.

It is used with substantives of quality, number, weight; also with the neuter singular, nominative and accusative of many words. The partitive genitive is used with numerals, both general and special, with pronouns, with comparatives and superlatives. G. 367-372; H. 441-443; A. 346; B. 201.

**52.** *Uterque* and *quisque* are commonly used as adjectives with substantives, as substantives with pronouns.

Here the genitive of the pronoun is partitive. G. 371, R. 1; H. 442 4; A. 346. d; B. 355. 2 and a.

53. The prepositional substantives, *causā*, *grātiā*, *ergō*, *īnstar*, are construed with the genitive: they usually follow their case. G. 373 and RR.; H. 475. 2; A. 359. b; B. 198. 1 and 2.

54. The genitive is used with adjectives of *fullness*, *participation*, *power*, *knowledge*, *ignorance*, *desire*, *disgust*. G. 374; H. 451. 1 and 2; A. 349. a; B. 204.

55. Some present participles take the genitive when they lose their verbal nature and are used adjectivally: the participle is transient, the adjective permanent.

The simple test is the substitution of the relative and the verb, which will stand for the participle. Verbals in *-āx* are so used in poetry and later prose. G. 375 and NN.; H. 451. 3 and N.; 452. 1; A. 349. b and NN. and c; B. 204. 1. a.

56. Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, and *forgetting* take the genitive.

Verbs of *reminding* more often take the ablative with *dē*, and the accusative neuter of a pronoun or a numeral adjective. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* also take the accusative, especially of things, and *recordor* takes the accusative only. G. 376 and RR.; H. 454-456; A. 350, 351; B. 206, 207.

57. Of verbs of *emotion*, *misereor* takes the genitive, the impersonals, *miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet*, *pertaesum est*, take the accusative of the person who feels, and the genitive of the exciting cause. G. 377; H. 457; A. 354; B. 209.

58. Verbs of judicial action, *accusing*, *convicting*, *condemning*, and *acquitting*, take the genitive of the charge.

Possible substitutes are *nōmine* or *crīmine* with the genitive, or the ablative with *dē*. Verbs of *condemning* and *acquitting* take the ablative as well as the genitive of the charge or punishment, always the ablative of a definite fine. G. 378 and RR.; H. 456; A. 352; B. 208.

59. Verbs of *rating* and *buying* are construed with the genitive of the general value or cost, and the ablative of the particular value or cost.

Verbs of *rating* have regularly the genitive of an adjective, as *magnī*, etc.; verbs of buying have the ablative except *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*. G. 379, 380; H. 448; A. 417; B. 203. 3, 4.

60. *Interest* and *rēfert* take a genitive of the person, seldom of the thing, concerned.

Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, **meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā, suā** (reflexive) are employed.

The object of concern is commonly put in the infinitive, accusative and infinitive, **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive, or an interrogative sentence. G. 381, 382. 2; H. 449; A. 355; B. 210, 211.

**61.** The genitive is found occasionally with certain verbs of *fullness*, although the ablative is the rule. G. 383. 1 and NN.; H. 458. 2; A. 356 and N.; B. 212. 1 and a.

### *The Ablative Case*

**62.** The ablative answers the question *Where?* and takes as a rule the preposition **in**. This is true even when the result of motion is designated, if the verb is one of *placing* or kindred signification.

The preposition is omitted with a few words: **terrā, marī, locō, locīs, parte, partibus, dextrā, sinistrā, laevā**; with names of towns in the singular of the third declension, and in the plural of all declensions; in citations from books and in enumerations; in designations of place with **tōtus, cūctus, omnis, medius**; in designations of place which may be regarded in the light of cause, manner, or instrument. G. 385-389 and RR. and NN.; H. 483-485; A. 426. 3, 428. b, e, 429-430; B. 228.

**63.** The ablative answers the question *Whence?* and takes as a rule the prepositions **ex, dē, ab**.

The prepositions are often omitted with verbs of *abstaining, removing, relieving*, and *excluding*, and kindred adjectives; with the names of towns and small islands; with **domō** and **rūre**: they are used with **urbe** or **oppidō** in apposition with a proper name. G. 390, 391 and RR. and NN. Cf. 374, N. 8. H. 461-466; A. 400-402, 426. 1, 427. 1, 428. a, b, c, f, g; B. 214, 229.

**64.** The ablative with **cum** is used to denote *accompaniment*.

In military expressions the ablative may stand without **cum** when modified by any adjective except a numeral. G. 392 and RR.; H. 473. 1, 474, N. 1; A. 413; B. 222.

**65.** *Time when or within which* is put in the ablative.

The preposition **in** is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time. Sometimes the use or omission of **in** changes the meaning. G. 393 and RR., 394, R.; H. 486, 487 and 1; A. 423, 424. a; B. 230, 231.

**66.** Participles which signify birth take the ablative of origin; sometimes with the prepositions *ex* and *dē*.

*Ab*, and occasionally *ex*, are employed of remote progenitors. G. 395; H. 469; A. 403 and *a*; B. 215.

**67.** The ablative of *material* takes *ex* in classical Latin.

*Cōnstāre*, *cōsistere*, and *continēri* may omit the preposition, sometimes also *fieri*. G. 396 and NN.; H. 470; A. 403 and *b*, *c*, *d*; cf. B. 218. 4.

**68.** The ablative of *respect* or *specification* is put in answer to the questions, From what point of view? According to what? By what? In respect to what?

Here belong the supine in *ū* and the ablative with *dignus* and *indignus*. G. 397 and NN.; H. 480, 481; A. 418 and *a*, *b*; B. 226 and 1, 2.

**69.** The ablative of *respect* is used with the comparative instead of *quam*, *than*, with the nominative or accusative; but in the classical language mainly after a negative or its equivalent.

Here the idiomatic ablatives, *opīniōne*, *spē*, *solitō*, *dictō*, *aequō*, *crēdibilī*, *iūstō*, represent a clause.

After *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, *longius*, even when *quam* is omitted, other cases than the ablative are found, as if *plūs* were *plūs quam*, etc. G. 398 and NN.; cf. 296 and RR.; H. 471; A. 406, 407; B. 217.

**70.** The ablative with *cum* is used to denote *manner*.

When there is an adjective modifier, or its equivalent, *cum* may be used or omitted. It is regularly omitted with such words as *modō*, *pactō*, *ratiōne*, *rītū*, *vī*, *viā*, *silentiō*, *iūre*, *iniūriā*, etc. G. 399 and NN.; H. 473. 3; A. 412; B. 220.

**71.** The ablative of *quality* has no preposition, and always takes an adjective or an equivalent.

External and transient qualities are put in the ablative, also parts of the body. Measure, number, time, space are put in the genitive. Otherwise there is no difference. G. 400 and RR.; H. 473. 2 and NN.; A. 415; B. 224.

**72.** The *means* or *instrument* is put in the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative has many special varieties: we may assign to this construction the ablative with many special verbs, *afficere*, *to treat*; verbs of

*sacrificing*; *nītor*, *I stay myself*; *fīdō*, *cōnfīdō*, *I trust, I rely on*; *frētus*, *contentus*; *fīō*, *faciō*, *sum*; *opus* and *ūsus est*, which also take the dative of the person, the deponents, *ūtor*, *abūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*. G. 401 and RR. and NN.; 406 and NN.; 407 and NN.; H. 476, 477; A. 409-411; B. 218.

**73.** The *agent* or *doer* is put in the ablative with the preposition *ab* (*ā*).

This applies also to the instrument, when personified; and the agent, when regarded as an instrument, may omit the preposition. G. 401 and RR.; H. 468; A. 405; B. 216.

**74.** The *standard of measure* is put in the ablative with verbs of *measurement* and *judgment*.

*Ex* is often found with the ablative, and regularly with *aestimāre*, *exīstimāre*, *spectāre*.

It is often hard to distinguish measure from respect. G. 402 and RR.; H. 480. 2.

**75.** The ablative is used with comparatives and words involving comparison to measure the *degree of difference*. G. 403 and NN.; H. 479; A. 414; B. 223.

**76.** *Definite price* is put in the ablative, always with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, except *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*. G. 404; H. 478; A. 416, 417; B. 225.

**77.** Verbs of *depriving* and *filling*, of *plenty* and *want*, take the ablative.

Verbs of *depriving* and *want* are nearer the idea of separation; *filling* and *abounding* require the ablative of the instrument. G. 405 and NN.; cf. 383. I; H. 462, 477. II; A. 356 and N., 401, 409. a; B. 214. I; (cf. 212. I and a), 218. 8.

**78.** The ablative of *cause* is used without a preposition, chiefly with verbs of emotion.

Sometimes the prepositions *dē* and *ex* are used, and occasionally *ab*. *Prae* is used of the preventing cause. G. 408 and NN.; H. 475; A. 404 and footnote; B. 219.

**79.** The so-called *ablative absolute* is an ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence.

Instead of a participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

Usually the ablative absolute can stand only when it is not identical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate, though this rule is sometimes violated. G. 409, 410 and R. 3; H. 489; A. 419, 420; B. 227.

**80.** Instead of the partitive genitive with numerals, pronouns, comparatives, and superlatives, the ablative with *ex*, *dē*, rarely *in*, may be employed, or the accusative with *inter* and *apud*. G. 372, R. 2; H. 444 and 1; A. 346. c; B. 201. 1. a.

## THE ROMAN CALENDAR

**81.** The names of the months were added as adjectives to the three points from which the Romans dated, the kalends, the nones, the ides. The kalends are the first day of each month.

The ides are the fifteenth day and the nones the seventh day in March, May, July, and October. In the other eight months the ides are the thirteenth and the nones the fifth day.

To turn Roman dates into English: for nones and ides add one to the date of the nones or ides and subtract the given number; for the kalends add two to the days of the preceding month and subtract the given number.

To obtain the year B.C., subtract the given date from 754 (753 B.C. being the assumed date of the founding of Rome, *annō urbiſ conditæ*).

To obtain the year A.D., subtract 753. G. Appendix, p. 491; H. 754; A. 630, 631; B. 371, 372.

## PRONOUNS

**82.** The personal pronoun as subject is not expressed in classical prose, except for emphasis or contrast. G. 207; H. 500; A. 295. a; B. 166. 2.

**83.** *Hīc*, *this*, the demonstrative of the first person, refers to that which is nearer the speaker, and may mean the speaker himself, his friends, his subject, his hobby, what has just been mentioned or is about to be mentioned.

*Iste*, *that*, is the demonstrative of the second person.

*Ille*, *that*, the demonstrative of the third person, denotes that which



is more remote from the speaker and is often in contrast to *hīc*. It may mean what has been mentioned, what is well known, what is to be recalled or expected.

*Hīc* and *ille* are often in contrast = *the latter* — *the former*, when both are matters of indifference; when the former is more important, *hīc* is *the former*, *ille* *the latter*. G. 305, 306, 307 and R. 1; H. 505–507; A. 297. a, b, c, e, f; B. 246.

84. The derived adverbs from *hīc*, *iste*, *ille*, retain the personal relations: *hīc*, *here* (where I am), *hinc*, *hence* (from where I am), *hūc*, *hither* (where I am), *istīc*, *there* (where you are), *illīc*, *there* (where he is), etc. G. 307, R. 3; H. 307. 3, 4, 5, 308. 2; A. 217 and N.; B. 140.

85. *Is*, *that*, is the determinative pronoun, and serves as the lacking pronoun of the third person. It furnishes the regular antecedent of the relative, but as such is often omitted, chiefly in the nominative. It often has the force of *tālis*.

With a copulative or adversative particle, *is* is used as *he* or *that* in English, for the purpose of emphasis, as *et is*, *atque is*, *isque*, *and he too*, *neque is*, *and he . . . not*. G. 308 and RR. 1 and 2; H. 508. 1, 2; A. 297. d, e, 298. a; B. 247.

86. The reflexive pronoun *suī*, etc., and the corresponding possessive, *suus*, are used in simple sentences and in principal clauses *regularly* when reference is made to the grammatical subject, *frequently* when reference is made to the actual subject.

In subordinate clauses the reflexive may refer *directly* to the subject of its own clause; or *indirectly* to the subject of the main clause, if the subordinate clause expresses the words or thought of the subject of the main clause, as in infinitive sentences, in direct questions, sentences of design; or first to one and then to the other; or to the logical rather than the grammatical subject in either clause.

Reflexives of the first and second persons are supplied from the oblique cases of *ego* and *tū*. G. 309, 520–522; H. 503, 504; A. 299–301; B. 244.

87. *Ipse*, *self*, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others.

*Ipse* is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation, in the nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the oblique cases when the object is emphatic.

Exceptions are common. *It* is sometimes used in indirect discourse

as an indirect reflexive. G. 311, 660. 5; H. 509; A. 298. c, d, e, f, 300. b; B. 249.

**88.** Of the indefinite pronouns **quīdam** is the most definite. The speaker may know, but he does not tell. In the plural, it is equivalent to *some*, without emphasis.

With an adjective **quīdam** often serves to heighten the attribute by adding a vagueness to it.

**Quīdam** with or without **quasi**, *as if*, is often used to modify an expression. In the Catiline it is found always with a proper noun. G. 313; H. 512 and 5 and 6; A. 310; B. 252. 3.

**89.** **Aliquis** (**aliquī**), substantival (and adjectival) forms respectively, *some one*, is wholly indefinite both to the speaker and to the hearer.

With numerals **aliquis** is used like English *some*. Occasionally it has the force of *many a*. G. 314 and RR.; H. 512 and 2, 3, 4; A. 310, 311; B. 252. 2 and 3.

**90.** **Quis** (**quī**), fainter than **aliquis**, is used chiefly after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**, and in relative sentences. G. 315; H. 512. 1; A. 310. a; B. 252. 1.

**91.** **Quisquam** is seldom used as an adjective except with designations of persons.

It has no feminine plural except in early Latin. Its plural is supplied from **ūllus**. Its corresponding adjective is **ullūs**. Its negative is **nēmō**.

**Quisquam** and **ūllus** are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences that imply total negation, in sweeping conditions, and after comparatives. G. 317., cf. 107. 3, N. 2; H. 187. 1, N. 2, 513; A. 151. d., 311, 312; B. 252. 4.

**92.** **Quisque**, *each one*, is loosely translated *every* when used with superlatives and ordinals. G. 318. 2; H. 515. 2; A. 313. b; B. 252; 5. c and d.

**93.** **Quisque** combines readily with the reflexives, **suī**, **sibī**, **sē**, **suus**, in their emphatic sense. Here the reflexive generally precedes. G. 318. 3; H. 675. 2; (A. 313 examples); B. 244. 4. a.

**94.** **Alter** and **alius** are both translated *other*, *another*, but **alter** refers to one of two, **alius** to one of many.

They are used in various phraseological ways. **Alius alium amat**, *one likes one, another another*.

**Alter** is often used in the sense of *neighbor*; also regularly in the

sense of *second*; *ūnus et alter* = *one or two*. G. 319; H. 516; A. 315; B. 253. 1, 2, 3.

## CONJUNCTIONS

### *Coördinate Conjunctions*

**95.** Sallust uses coördinate conjunctions sparingly. For the uses of these conjunctions, a knowledge of which should be insisted upon, see G. 473-502; H. 657-661; A. 323-324; B. 341-345. Only one or two need special mention.

**96.** *Que . . . que, both . . . and*, enters prose with Sallust, but the poets are fond of it. G. 476. N. 5. d; H. 657. 4; A. 325. e.

**97.** *Igitur, therefore*, is used of *opinions* which have their natural ground in the preceding statements; in Cicero it usually comes after the first word in a sentence, in Sallust never.

In historical writers *igitur* is sometimes used like *itaque*. G. 501 and N.; H. 315. 4, 660, 677; A. 324. i and j; B. 344. 1. c and 2

### *Subordinate Conjunctions*

**98.** The negative of *sī* is *sī nōn* or *nisi*. *Sī nōn* emphasizes *not* and negatives a particular word. It is the rule when the positive of the same verb precedes and when the condition is concessive.

*Nisi* means *unless*, and is used when an exception or restriction is made to the leading statement, especially after negatives. G. 591; H. 575. 2; A. 525. a; B. 306.

**99.** *Nisi* is often used after negative sentences or equivalents, *alius*, *aliter*, etc., in the signification of *but, except, besides, only*. G. 591, R. 2; G. (S.) 591, R.; H. 516. 3; A. 525. 3; B. 306. 4.

**100.** A second conditional clause of contrary meaning to the first, if affirmative, is introduced by *sīn*; if negative, by *sī nōn* (with verb) or *sī minus* (without verb).

*Sī manēbit laudābō* is denied affirmatively by *sīn abībit culpābō*, negatively by *sī nōn mānēbit culpābō* or *sī minus culpābō*. G. 592 and R. and N.; H. 575. 2, 3, 5; A. 525 a and d; B. 306. 2 and 3.

**101.** In Latin the relative pronoun and other relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses.

The awkwardness or impossibility of a literal translation may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appro-

priate conjunction. G. 610 and R. 1, 612; H. 510; A. 308. f and N.; B. 251. 6.

**102.** Note especially **quod**, used as an adverbial accusative, at the beginning of a sentence or clause, in combination with **sī** and its compounds, **ubī**, **quia**, **quoniam**, etc., in which **quod** means *and as for that*, and is sometimes translated *and*, *but*, *therefore*, *whereas*, sometimes not at all. G. 610, R. 2; H. 510. 9; A. 397. a; B. 185. 2.

## THE SYNTAX OF VERBS

### *Tenses of the Indicative*

**103.** The present tense is used far more frequently than in English, *as a lively representation of the past* (historical present).

Naturally Sallust uses this with great frequency. G. 229; H. 532. 3; A. 469; B. 259. 3.

**104.** The perfect is frequently used of the present result of a more remote action, where the pure perfect is often translated by the English present: **nōvī**, *I have become acquainted with, I know*; **meminī**, *I remember*; **ōdī**, *I hate*; **cōnsuēvī**, *I am accustomed*, etc. G. 236. 2 and R.; H. 538. 4; A. 476; B. 262.

**105.** The perfect (*gnomic*) is sometimes used of a general truth, especially with negatives. G. 236, N.; H. 538. 5; A. 475 and N.; B. 262. B. 1.

**106.** Latin exactness in expressing futurity is indicated by the use of the future tense in the subordinate clause of a sentence, where, in English, the futurity would be sufficiently expressed by the future tense in the principal clause. G. 242 and R. 1; H. 536. 1; A. 472. b; B. 261. 2.

When one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the future perfect. G. 244 and R. 2; H. 540 and 2; A. 478 and N.; B. 264. a.

**107.** When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect, the subsequent action in the present, imperfect, or future, according to the relation. This exactness is carried into the subjunctive mood. G. 567 and N.

**108.** In letters, the perfect, or the imperfect may be used for the present, and the pluperfect for any past tense, as if the letter were dated at the time it is supposed to be received. This style is employed mostly at the beginning and the end. G. 252; H. 539. 1; A. 479; B. 265.

**109.** In historical narratives, temporal clauses with **postquam** (**posteaquam**), **ubi**, **ut**, **simulac**, **ut primum**, and **cum primum** commonly take the historical perfect or the historical present indicative.

The imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).

The pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause, or with **postquam**, when a definite interval is mentioned. G. 561-563; H. 538. 3, 602 and N. 1; A. 543; B. 287.

## SEQUENCES OF TENSES

### *Tenses of the Subjunctive*

**110.** All forms that relate to the present and the future (principal tenses) are followed by the present subjunctive for continued action, the perfect subjunctive for completed action (principal tenses).

All forms that relate to the past (historical tenses) are followed by the imperfect subjunctive for continued action, the perfect subjunctive for completed action (historical tenses).

This is the general rule of *sequence of tenses*. G. 510 and R.; H. 543-545; A. 482-484; B. 267.

**111.** The treatment of the historical present according to its sense (past) is the rule in classical Latin, especially when the dependent clause precedes. But there are many exceptions. G. 511, R. 1; H. 546; A. 485. e; B. 268. 3.

**112.** The pure perfect is usually treated as an historical perfect in the matter of sequence.

The reverse usage, when an historical perfect is followed by a primary subjunctive, is not common. G. 511, RR. 3 and 4; H. 546; A. 485. a; B. 268. 1.

**113.** Sentences of *design* (purpose) have, as a rule, only the present and imperfect subjunctive. G. 512.

**114.** Sentences of *result* show exceptional sequence in having the present subjunctive after past tenses to denote the continuance into the present, and the perfect subjunctive to imply final result, or actual result as opposed to the result that tends to take place (imperfect). G. 513; H. 550; A. 485. c and NN.; B. 268. 6.

**115.** The imperfect subjunctive, even though it is used in opposition

to the present, has historical sequence. G. 517 and R. 2; H. 547; A. 485. h; B. 268. 5.

*The Indicative Mood*

**116.** *Quod, that, in that, the fact that, as to the fact that*, is used with the indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after verbs of *adding* and *dropping*, *doing* and *happening* with an adverb, and after demonstratives. G. 525; H. 588. II. 3, N.; A. 572; B. 299.

**117.** Causal sentences with *quod, quia, quoniam*, and *quandō* take the indicative in direct discourse, when the writer himself advances the reason. G. 540; H. 588. I; A. 540 and a; B. 286.

**118.** *Dum, donec, quoad, quamdiū, so long as, while*, take the indicative of all tenses.

*Dum, while, while yet, during*, regularly takes the present indicative, to denote continued and overlapping action in past time. G. 569, 570; H. 533. 4, 603. I, 604; A. 555, 556; B. 293. I and II.

**119.** *Antequam* and *priusquam* (written also *ante . . . quam, prius . . . quam, ante* and *prius* being adverbs, and *quam* a relative particle) take the present, perfect, and future perfect indicative when the limit is stated as a fact. G. 574-576; H. 605; A. 550, 551; B. 291.

**120.** *Temporal cum.* — *Cum, when*, is used with all the tenses of the indicative to designate *merely temporal relations*. G. 580; H. 600. I, 601; A. 545 and a, 546. a, 547, 548; B. 288-290.

**121.** Concessive clauses with *cum*, which take the indicative in Plautus and Terence, occasionally have the indicative elsewhere to emphasize the fact rather than the concession. Cf. G. 580, NN. I and 2; H. 599 and I; A. 549, N. 3.

**122.** *Nisi forte, unless, perhaps, nisi vērō, unless, indeed*, either limit a previous statement, or make an ironical concession. G. 591, R. 4; H. 575. 8; A. 525. b; B. 306. 5.

**123.** The logical condition simply states a proposition: if this is so, then that is so, with nothing implied as to the fulfillment of the condition.

Any tense may be used. The protasis is always in the indicative; likewise the apodosis, except where an equivalent of the future (subjunctive or imperative) may be substituted. G. 595; H. 574; A. 515; B. 302.

**124.** *Etsī, etiamsī, tametsī* take the indicative or subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate the use of *sī, if*.

The indicative is more common, especially with *etsī*. Sallust is fond of *tametsī*. G. 604 and RR.; H. 586. I; A. 527. c and N. 1; B. 309. 2.

**125.** In general relative expressions introduced by the double formations, *quisquis, quotquot*, and all forms in *cumque, ever*, the indicative is employed in classical Latin, where we may use in English a subjunctive or its equivalent. G. 625; cf. 254, R. 4; H. 589. I and N.; cf. 182. 3; A. 542; B. 312.

**126.** *Quippe quī*, which regularly takes the subjunctive, usually has the indicative in early Latin and in Sallust. G. 626, N. 1; H. 592. 2, 4.

**127.** The indicative is retained in indirect discourse in the subordinate clause: (a) in explanations or reasons of the narrator; (b) in mere circumlocutions. G. 628, R., 655, R. 2; H. 643. 3, 4; A. 583 and a; B. 314. 3.

**128.** In comparative sentences the mood of the independent clause is the indicative, unless the subjunctive is required by the laws of indirect discourse, or by the conditional idea. G. 639; H. 584. 5.

### *Independent Subjunctives*

**129.** The *potential subjunctive* represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion. The tone varies from vague surprise to moral certainty, from "may" and "might" to "must." The negative is the negative of the indicative, *nōn*.

The potential of the present or future is the present or perfect subjunctive. The potential of the past is the imperfect subjunctive, chiefly in the ideal second person, an imaginary "you."

The potential subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker, since the mood of the question is the mood of the expected or anticipated answer. G. 257-259; H. 552-557; A. 445-447; B. 280.

**130.** The *optative subjunctive* is used in expressing a wish. The negative is *nē*.

The present is used of a future or attainable wish, the imperfect of one unattainable in the present, the pluperfect of one unattainable in the past.

*Utinam* is generally employed with the imperfect and pluperfect, less frequently with the present.

Another form of the optative subjunctive is asseverative. G. 260-262; H. 558; A. 441, 442; B. 279.

**131.** The *hortatory subjunctive* expresses an exhortation. This use is almost confined to the first person plural of the present. G. 263. 1; H. 559. 1; A. 439; B. 274.

**132.** The subjunctive is used as an *imperative*: 1. in the second person (*a*) chiefly in the present singular as an imaginary "you"; (*b*) in the perfect negatively. 2. In the third person (here called by some grammarians, jussive). G. 263. 2, 3; A. 559. 2, 560, 561; A. 439 and a, 450; B. 275, 276.

**133.** Closely allied to the hortatory and imperative subjunctive is the *concessive*. G. 264; H. 559. 3; A. 440; B. 308.

**134.** The *deliberative* subjunctive is used in questions which expect an imperative answer.

Rhetorical questions (questions which anticipate the answer), under this head, are hardly to be distinguished from potential. These latter, according to most grammarians, are the strictly deliberative. G. 265 and R., 465; H. 559. 4; A. 444; B. 277.

### *Dependent Subjunctives*

**135.** *Cūrā* (*cūrātō*) *ut, take care that*; *fac* (*facitō*) *ut, cause that*; *fac* (*facitō*), *do*, with the subjunctive, are common circumlocutions for the positive imperative. G. 271. 1; H. 565. 4; A. 449. c.

**136.** *Cavē* and *cavē* (*cavētō*) *nē, beware lest*, with the subjunctive, are circumlocutions for the negative imperative (prohibitive). *Fac nē* is also familiarly used. G. 271. 2; H. 561. 2; A. 450; B. 276. c.

**137.** The indirect question is put in the subjunctive mood, the same particles—for the most part interrogative pronouns and adverbs—being used as in direct questions. In the double questions the particles are *utrum . . . an, ne . . . an, . . . an*.

*Num* loses its negative force and becomes *whether*, and *sī* is sometimes used for *whether*. G. 458, 460, 467; H. 649. II, 650; A. 334, 335, 573, 574; B. 300.

**138.** Causal sentences with *quod, quia, quoniam*, and *quandō* take the subjunctive when another's reason is assigned, *i.e.*, in indirect discourse (partial or total).

*Nōn quod, nōn quō, nōn quia*, etc., introduce a hypothetical reason,



and hence take the subjunctive, but if they state a fact they take the indicative. G. 541 and NN.; H. 588, II; A. 540. 2 and NN.; B. 286.

**139.** Sentences of *design*, or *final sentences*, use the optative subjunctive, present and imperfect tenses.

Pure final sentences are introduced by **ut**, **quō** with comparatives, **nē** continued by **nēve**, **neu**, **quōminus**, in special uses, relative pronouns, and adverbs G. 543, 544. I, 545; H. 568; A. 531; B. 282.

**140.** **Quō** without a comparative, in final sentences, is rare. A number of instances occur in Sallust. G. 545, R. 1; H. 568. 7; A. 531. a, n.; B. 282. 1. a.

**141.** Complementary final clauses, or those in which the design lies in the leading verb, well explained as clauses of indirect request or command, follow verbs of *willing* and *wishing*, of *warning* and *beseeking*, of *urging* and *demanding*, of *resolving* and *endeavoring*. They have the constructions of the pure final sentences.

Many of the verbs allow the infinitive, and sometimes even the perfect infinitive when the present might have been expected. G. 546 and RR. and NN.; H. 565, 566; A. 563-566; B. 295, 296.

**142.** Verbs and phrases signifying to *prevent*, to *forbid*, to *refuse*, and to *beware*, may take **nē** or **quōminus** with the subjunctive, if they are not negated: if negated, they may take **quīn** or **quōminus**.

The sequence is not wholly final, *i.e.* not confined to the present and imperfect. G. 547-549; H. 568. 8, 595. 2, 596. 2; A. 558, 559; B. 295. 3.

**143.** Verbs of *fearing* take any tense of the subjunctive, though they belong to the final sentence in that they have the optative subjunctive.

They are introduced by **nē** if a positive is feared; by **ut** if a negative is feared except when the verb of *fearing* is negated, in which case **nē nōn** is used. G. 550; cf. 543, R. 3; H. 567; A. 564; B. 296. 2.

**144.** Consecutive sentences show the consequence or tendency of actions. Those in which the tendency is expressed by the particle are pure. In sequence they allow any tense.

The conjunctions are **ut**, for the positive, **ut nōn** (continued by **neque**, **nec**), for the negative. **Quīn** (= **ut nōn**) is often used after a negative.

Correlative demonstratives often occur in the principal sentence: **ita**, **sīc**, **tam**, **tantus**, **tālis**, **tot**, etc. G. 551, 552; cf. 543; H. 570; A. 536-538; B. 284.

**145.** Complementary consecutive (result) sentences follow verbs of *effecting*, which express the tendency. The conception varies between final and consecutive. The negative is *nōn* or *nē*. The subjunctive is potential when *ut nōn* is used.

Such verbs are: 1. Verbs of causation, *faciō*, etc. (sequence final). 2. Verbs of compelling and permitting (sequence final). 3. Passive verbs of effecting and many impersonal verbs of happening and following (sequence consecutive). 4. Very many impersonal verbs and combinations of neuter adjectives with *est* (sequence consecutive). G. 553; cf. 543; H. 571; A. 567-571; B. 297.

**146.** *Quīn*, which is primarily a consecutive particle, is used when verbs and phrases of *preventing*, *omitting*, *refraining*, *refusing*, and *delaying*, *doubting*, and *uncertainty* are negated or questioned.

Verbs of *preventing* and the like have the final sequence. Verbs of *doubt* and *uncertainty* have the sequence of the interrogative sentences, *i.e.* any tense of the subjunctive including the periphrastic conjugation. *Quīn* (= *ut nōn*) may be used after any negative sentence (consecutive sequence). G. 554-556; H. 594. II, 595; A. 557-559; B. 284. 3, 298.

**147.** The subjunctive of the ideal second person occurs in many temporal sentences with *postquam*, *ubi*, etc., especially of iterative action, and in conditional sentences in connection with the universal present. G. 567, 595, R. 3; H. 602. 4; cf. 578. 2; A. 520. 1; B. 302. 2, 356. 3.

**148.** *Dum*, *modō*, and *dummodō*, *if only*, *provided only*, are used with the present and imperfect subjunctive in conditional wishes. The negative is *nē*. G. 573; H. 587; A. 528; B. 310.

**149.** *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used with the subjunctive when an ideal limit is given; that is, when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate. G. 577; cf. 574, R. 1; H. 605; A. 551; B. 292.

**150.** *Historical cum*. — *Cum*, *as*, *when*, is used in narrative with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, to give the circumstances of a past action. G. 585 and R.; H. 600. II and I; A. 546 and NN.; B. 288. 1. B.

**151.** *Causal cum*. — *Cum*, *when*, *whereas*, *since*, *seeing that*, is used with any tense of the subjunctive, to denote the reason of an action. G. 586; H. 598; A. 549; B. 286. 2.

**152.** *Concessive and adversative cum*. — *Cum*, *whereas*, *while*, *although*, is used with any tense of the subjunctive, to express concession or opposition. G. 587; H. 598; A. 549; B. 309. 3.

**153.** The *ideal conditional sentence* represents a proposition as still

in suspense according to the formula *if this were to (should) happen, that would happen*. The protasis is put in the present subjunctive for continued action, and in the perfect subjunctive for completion or attainment. The apodosis is in the present or perfect subjunctive. The imperative and future indicative or equivalents are often found.

In case the point of view is past the protasis is found in the imperfect, very rarely the pluperfect subjunctive, and the apodosis has corresponding forms. This is rare because it corresponds in form to the unreal condition. G. 596; cf. 594 and NN.; H. 576, 577; A. 516; cf. 513; B. 303.

**154.** The *unreal conditional sentence* is used of that which is unfulfilled or impossible, and is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive for continued action—generally in opposition to the present; and by the pluperfect subjunctive—uniformly in opposition to the past.

In the apodosis the past tenses of the indicative may be used to express what was *intended* or *likely*, or *already begun*. The indicative is the regular construction in the apodosis with verbs signifying *possibility* or *power*, *obligation* or *necessity*. G. 597; cf. 594, N. 1; H. 579; A. 517; cf. 513; B. 304.

**155.** *Conditional sentences of comparison* introduced by *ut sī, ac sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut*, and *velut sī, as if*, take the subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary course of the conditional. G. 602 and RR.; H. 584; A. 524; B. 307.

**156.** Optative relative sentences are put in the subjunctive of design (purpose), when *quī = ut* is. The tenses are present and imperfect. G. 630; cf. 543–545; H. 590; cf. 568; A. 531. 2; B. 282. 2.

**157.** Potential relative sentences are put in the subjunctive of tendency (result), when *quī = ut* is: 1. With a definite antecedent, with *idōneus, aptus, dignus*, etc. 2. With an indefinite antecedent. 3. After comparatives with *quam*, etc. G. 631. 1, 2, 3, 4, 632; H. 591. 1, 2, etc.; A. 535–537; B. 284. 1, 2, etc.

**158.** Relative clauses of cause take the subjunctive. *Quī = cum* is. G. 633; H. 592; A. 535. e, 540. c; B. 283. 3.

**159.** In indirect discourse all commands and all questions (except rhetorical questions of the first and third persons), and all subordinate clauses take the subjunctive. Tenses are used according to the laws of

sequence. G. 650-659; H. 642-644; A. 583, 585, 586-593; B. 314-316, 318-324.

*The Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse*

**160.** *Nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with the infinitive is a very common substitute for the negative imperative. G. 271. 2; H. 561. 1; A. 450; B. 276. c.

**161.** The infinitive, as a subject, or in apposition with the subject, is treated as a neuter substantive. It is used especially with many impersonal verbs and *esse*. G. 421, 422; H. 615; A. 452-455; B. 327.

**162.** The infinitive is used as the object of auxiliary verbs, such as denote *will, power, duty, habit, inclination, resolve, continuance, end*, etc., with their opposites. G. 423 and NN.; G. (S.) 423 and RR.; H. 607-609; A. 456-458; B. 328.

**163.** The infinitive, as a verbal substantive, may be used as a predicate after the copula *esse, to be*, and the like. G. 424; H. 616. 1, N.; A. 452. 3.

**164.** The infinitive is often used where the genitive of the gerund might be expected, *e.g.*, with *cōpia est, ratiō est, cōsiliū est, cōsiliū capere, cōsiliū inīre*, etc., sometimes with *iūs est, fātum est*, rarely with *fās est, nefās est*.

Sometimes there is a difference in meaning: thus *tempus* with the gerund, *the proper time (season)*, with the infinitive *high time*. G. 428, N. 2; G. (S.) 428, R. 2; A. 504, N. 2.

**165.** With *prohibēre* (sometimes with *impedīre*) the infinitive is the regular construction instead of the subjunctive with *quōminus*, etc. G. 549, N. 1; cf. 423 and N. 2; A. 558. b and N.; B. 295. 3 and N.

**166.** *Historical infinitive*.—The present infinitive is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid sequence of events, with the subject in the nominative; generally, several infinitives in succession. It has the effect of an imperfect. G. 647 and NN.; H. 610; A. 463 and N.; B. 335.

*The Infinitive in Indirect Discourse*

**167.** Declaratory sentences upon becoming indirect change their main clause to the infinitive with subject accusative. Rhetorical questions, being equivalent in force to emphatic statements, regularly stand in the infinitive in indirect discourse.

The present infinitive expresses action contemporaneous with the leading verb of saying, etc.; the perfect expresses action prior or

antecedent; the future expresses action subsequent. G. 527, 530, 531; H. 617-620, 642; A. 580, 581, 584; B. 314, 317; cf. 329-332.

**168.** Passive verbs of *saying*, *showing*, *believing*, and *perceiving* may be construed either personally or impersonally: 1. In the simple tenses the personal construction is preferred, except with *crēditur*. 2. In the compound tenses the impersonal construction is preferred. G. 528 and RR. and NN.; H. 611 and NN.; A. 582; B. 332 and N.

**169.** Verbs of *will* and *desire* take a dependent accusative and infinitive. The relation is that of an object to be effected.

When the subject of the infinitive is the same as the subject of the leading verb, the subject of the infinitive is usually not expressed.

Such verbs also take the subjunctive with or without *ut*. G. 532 and RR. and NN.; cf. 423 and N. 2, 546; H. 614; cf. 565-566, 607; A. 563. b; B. 328. 1, 331. IV; cf. 295-296.

**170.** The accusative with the infinitive may be treated as the subject, or in apposition with the subject, of a sentence. The predicate is a substantive or a neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase. G. 535 and RR.; cf. 422 and NN.; H. 615; A. 454 and N.; B. 330.

### *Participles*

**171.** *Habeō* or *teneō*, *I hold*, *I have*, with the accusative of the perfect participle passive, is not a mere circumlocution for the perfect, but lays peculiar stress on the maintenance of the result. G. 238; H. 640. 2; A. 497. b; B. 337. 6.

**172.** Note that use of the perfect passive indicative where each element has its full force, the participle being treated as an adjective. In this case the tense is not past, as: *Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs*. G. 250, R. 2; H. 640. 3; A. 495.

**173.** The perfect participle of many deponent verbs has both active and passive meanings: *adeptus*, *having acquired*, or *having been acquired*. G. 167, N. 2; H. 222. 2; A. 190. b; B. 112. b.

**174.** The participle, as an adjective, often modifies its verbal nature so as to be characteristic or descriptive. G. 438; H. 636; A. 494; B. 337.

**175.** The participle is used after verbs of *perception* and *representation*, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation. But the infinitive is the rule for the language, and must

of course be used when the participle is lacking G. 536; cf. 527, N. 1, and G. (S.) 527, R. 5; H. 613. 4; A. 497. d; B. 337. 3.

**176.** The relative sentence is sometimes represented by a participle, but generally the participle expresses a closer connection than the mere explanatory relative. G. 637; H. 637.

**177.** Participles are used to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as time and circumstance, cause and occasion, condition and concession. The classification cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another. G. 664; H. 638; A. 496; B. 337. 2.

**178.** The perfect passive participle is often conveniently translated by a coordinate clause: *urbem captam diruit* = *he captured and destroyed the city*. G. 664, R. 1; H. 639; A. 496, N. 2; B. 337. 5.

### *The Gerund and the Gerundive*

**179.** Instead of the gerund with an accusative object, the object is generally put in the case of the gerund with the gerundive as an attribute. In model prose this construction is invariably employed with prepositions. G. 427 and NN.; H. 623; A. 503; B. 339. 1.

**180.** The genitive of the gerund and gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement. G. 428; H. 626; A. 504; B. 338.

**181.** The genitive of the gerund and gerundive is used very commonly with *causā*, less often with *grātiā*, and rarely with *ergō*, *on account of*, to express design (purpose).

The genitive alone in this final sense is found several times in Salust. G. 428, R. 2; H. 626. 5; cf. 626. 3 (example); A. 504. a, N. 1, 504. b; B. 338. c, 339. 6.

**182.** The accusative of the gerund and gerundive is used with the preposition *ad* to express design (purpose). G. 432 and R., 544, R. 2 (3); H. 628; A. 506; B. 338. 3.

**183.** The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used as the ablative of means and cause, seldom as the ablative of manner or circumstance.

This ablative is found with the prepositions *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, often *in*, but seldom *prō*. G. 431, 433; H. 629-631; A. 507; B. 338. 4.

*The Supine*

**184.** The accusative supine in **-um** is used chiefly after verbs of motion, to express design (purpose). G. 435 and NN.; H. 633, 634; A. 509 and NN.; B. 340. 1.

**185.** The ablative supine in **-u** is used chiefly with neuter adjectives, **facile**, **difficile**, **iūcundum**, etc., and with **fās**, **nefās**, **opus**, as an ablative of the point of view from which. It never takes an object. G. 436 and G., NN.; H. 635; A. 510 and NN.; B. 340. 2.

## FIGURES

**186.** The grouping of coördinate words without coördinate conjunctions is called *Asyndeton*. Sallust makes frequent use of this figure. G. 473, R.; 474, N.; H. 657. 6; A. 323. b, 601. c; B. 341. 4. a, 346.

**187.** When pairs are contrasted, the second may be put in the same order as the first (*anaphora*), or in inverse order (*chiasmus*).

Sallust is fond of these figures, especially *chiasmus*. G. 682; H. 666; A. 598. f; B. 350. 11. b and c.

**188.** *Hendiadys* consists in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive. G. 698; H. 751, 3, N. 1; A. 640; B. 374. 4.

**189.** *Litotes* is affirming something by denying the contrary, or the use of two negatives for an emphatic affirmative. G. 700; H. 752. 8; A. 326. c and 641; B. 375. 1.

**190.** *Tmesis*, a figure of prosody, is separating compound words into their parts. *Quō mē cunque* = *quōcumque mē*. G. 726; B. 367. 7.

**191.** *Zeugma* is the use of a verb with two different words, to only one of which it strictly applies. G. 690; H. 751. 2, N.; A. 640; B. 374. 2. a.

# VOCABULARY

The fundamental meaning from which other meanings may be derived is printed in italics. Verbs of the first and fourth conjugations are indicated by (1) and (4) respectively.

## A

- ā, ab**, prep. with abl., from, 33, 59, 256; by, 158, 232; since, 873; against, 1095; (in cpds.) (1) away, down, (sometimes) **un-**; (2) to indicate completeness.
- ab-dicō** (1), resign, 877.
- ab-ditus**, -a, -um, adj., *hidden*; secret, 361.
- ab-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead away, 1277.
- ab-eō**, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum, *prae-cipitem abire*, to rush headlong to ruin, 484.
- ab-iūrō** (1), forswear, 483.
- ab-solvō**, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, treat, 73; state, 716.
- abstinentia**, -ae, f., *self-restraint*; economy, 56; self-denial, 1236.
- ab-sum**, -esse, āfui, āfutūrum, with **ab**, hold aloof, 112; fail, 407; be away, 763.
- ab-surdus**, -a, -um, adj., inglorious, 44; without merit, 485.
- abundē**, adv., in abundance, 411; in profusion, 1313.
- ab-ūtor**, -ūtī, -ūsus sum, misuse, 235.
- ac**, see **atque**; **iūxtā ac** = as little as, 702.
- ac cēdō**, -ere, -cessī [ad + cēdō], with **ad**, be added, 205; advance on, 604; approach, 827, 900.
- accendō**, -ere, -cendi, -cēsum, *set fire to*; be on fire, 373; arouse, 455, 1361; inflame, 481; fire, 996.
- ac-cidō**, -ere, -cidi [ad + cadō], befall, 988; it befalls (impers.), 1035.
- ac-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum [ad + capiō], accept, 52; learn, 100; receive, 116, 172, 860; hear, 411; **datā atque acceptā fidē** = exchange pledges, 818.
- ac-cūsō** (1), [ad + causa], find fault with, 753.
- acerbus**, -a, -um, adj., *sharp*; harsh, 1029.
- aciēs**, -ēī, f., *sharp edge*; rank, 1369.
- ācriter**, adv., *sharply*; eagerly, 1367.
- āctiō**, -ōnis, f., [agō] (pl.), official measure, 792.
- āctor**, -ōris, m. [agō], doer, 47.
- ad**, prep. with acc., *to, toward*; to, 32; into, 54; for, 393; besides, 495; before, 536; near, 553; toward, 572; **ad hōc**, in addition to, 252, 309, etc.; (in cpds.) (1) to, towards; (2) at, by; (3) on, upon, against; (4) up; (5) it also may indicate conformity or increase, intensity or commencement.



- ad-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum**, win over, 590; bring to, 891; increase, 956.
- ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**, bring, 1256; **in maxumam spem addūcere**, raise hopes, 757.
- ad-eō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum**, go to, 776.
- ad-eō**, adv.: **id adeō**, and just this, 683; this in particular, 707.
- adeptus**, see **adipīscor**.
- ad-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum** [**ad + agō**]: **ad iūs iūrandum adigere** = bind by oath, 431.
- ad-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum** [**ad + emō**], take away, 229.
- ad-ipīscor, -ī, adeptus sum** [**ad + apīscor**], attain, 131; obtain, 213, 458; win, 732, 1227; gain, 1392.
- ad-itus, -ūs, m.** [**ad + eō**], access, 797.
- ad-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctum**, join, 473.
- ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum**, help, 806.
- ad-moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, give warning, 95; remind, 425.
- ad-nītor, -nītī, -nīxus sum**, exert one's self, 344.
- ad-olēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultum**, become greater, 1073.
- ad-scīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum**, attach, 467; receive, 866.
- ad-sentior, -irī, -sēnsus sum**, with dat., assent to, 1089.
- ad-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum**, attain, 88.
- ad-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī**, sit down, 581, 1197.
- ad-sistō, -ere, -stitī**, take position, 1349.
- ad-sum, -esse, -fuī**, wax, 1142; be present, 1352.
- adulēscēns, -entis, m.**, *growing up*; young man, 258, 268, 1175; young, 710; **adulēscēns nōbilis**, a young nobleman, 329.
- adulēscēntia, -ae, f.** [**adulēscēns**], (age between **pueritia** and **iuventūs**, 15-30), youth, 585, 1180.
- adulēscēntulus, -ī, m.** [*dimin.* of **adulēscēns**], a mere youth, 54; youngster, 927; very young man, 1162.
- adulter, -erī, m.**, adulterer, 248.
- adultus, -a, -um, adj.** [cf. **adulēscēns**], grown up, 273.
- ad-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum**, come to, 459.
- ad-ventō (1)**, [*freq.* of **adveniō**], come up, 1264.
- ad-vocō (1)**, convene, 1292.
- ad-vorsus, -a, -um, adj.**, hostile, 972, 1314; unfavorable, 1289; **advorsōs habēre** = make enemies, 1108; **advorsis volneribus**, wounds in front, 1389; **advorsa**, failures, 55.
- aedēs, -is, f.**, *fireplace*; temple, 856; house (pl.), 361.
- aedificō (1)**, [**aedēs + faciō**], build, 34, 396.
- aedilis, -is, m.** [**aedēs**], aedile, 879, a magistrate at Rome who superintended public buildings of all kinds.
- aeger, -gra, -grum, adj.**, *ill*; **pedibus aeger** = afflicted with gout, 1351.
- aemula, -ae, f.**, *seeker*; rival, 176.
- aequābiliter, adv.** [**aequos**], fairly, 26.
- aequālis, -e, adj.** [**aequos**], equal, 1221.

- aequāliter**, adv. [**aequos**], uniformly, equally.
- aequē**, adv. [**aequos**], alike, 196; to the same extent.
- aequitās, -ātis**, f. [**aequos**], fairness, 31, 166.
- aequos, -a, -om**, adj., *level*, right, 997; level, 1286; **aequō animō** = readily, 52; **aequā manū** = in drawn battle, 730; **locus aequus**, plain, 1339.
- aerārium, -ī**, n. [**aes**], public treasury, 1122.
- aerumna, -ae**, f., tribulation, 1022.
- aes, aeris**, n., *metal money*; bronze, 619; **aes aliēnum**, debt, 249, 290.
- aestumō, -āre** (1), *put a price on*; estimate, 1329.
- aestuō, (1)**, *be heated*; be inflamed, 457.
- aetās, -ātis**, *age*; youth, 59; life, 63; old age, 120; age, 260, 1221; years, 273; increasing age, 469; time of life, 711; **viget aetās** = is in the prime of life, 388; **aetātem agere** = live, 66, 726, 1002, 1320; **extrēma aetās** = declining years, 926.
- aeternus, -a, -um**, adj. [**aetās**], everlasting, 10.
- af-ferō, -ferre, attuli, allātum** [**ad + ferro**], bring to, 546, 860.
- afflictō** (1), [**ad + flīctō**, *freq. of flīgō*], strike at; **afflictāre sē**, beat one's breast, 572.
- af-fluō, -ere, -fluxī** [**ad + fluō**], abound, 674.
- ager, -grī**, m., *field*; property, 108; land, 203; district, 504, 556, 662, 790, 1277; field, 529.
- ag-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum** [**ad + gradior**], attack, 354, 799; make attack, 1319.
- agitō** (1), [*freq. of agō*], pass, 19; stir, 89; manage, 172; plan, 372; act, 451; devise, 463; scheme, 511; stir up, 717; keep active, 783; give vent to, 886; reflect, 1210; contrive, 1282; prevail (pass.), 1399.
- agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive**; pass, 66; discuss, 359; accomplish, 408; drive, 592; spend, 696; dispose of, 828; do, 833; transact, 938; confer, 1085; attend to, 1140; **agī + dē**, the question is one of, 1104; **agundō**, action, 1170; **initium agundī facere**, make a beginning of operations, 423.
- agrestis, -e**, adj. [**ager**], staying in the field, rustic, 103; **agrestis, -is**, m., a countryman.
- aiō, say**; assert, 893, 1051.
- alacer, -cris, -cre**, adj., *darting*; eager, 428.
- algor, -ōris**, m., *cold*, 81.
- aliās**, adv. [**alius**], under other circumstances, 179.
- alibī**, adv. [**alius**], in other places, 1375.
- aliēnō** (1), [**alienus**], set aside, 655.
- aliēnus, -a, -um**, adj. [**alius**], another's, 83, 129; for others, 651; disaffected, 681; inconsistent, 1016; foreign, 1065; dangerous, 1270; **neque aliēnus**, and in sympathy with, 761. See *aes*.
- aliō**, adv. [**alius**]; **alius . . . aliō**, in different directions, 28, 505.

**aliquandō**, adv. [cf. **alius** + **quandō**], now at last, 1103.  
**aliquantō**, adv. [cf. **alius** + **quantus**], somewhat, 150.  
**aliquis** (-quī), -**qua**, -**quid** (-**quod**), indef. pron., [cf. **alius** + **quis** (quī)], some, 40; some one, 1053.  
**aliquot**, indecl. adj. [cf. **alius** + **quot**]; several, 468.  
**aliter**, adv. [**alius**], in any other case, 543; otherwise, 813, 1085.  
**alius**, -**a**, -**uī**, gen. **alius** or **alterius**, dat. **aliī**, adj., *other*, 45, 159; else, 725; different, 1091; **pars** . . . **aliī** = some . . . others, 18; **aliud** . . . **aliī** = one . . . another, 185; **aliī** . . . **pars** = some . . . others, 718.  
**alō**, -**ere**, -**uī**, **alitur**, *feed*; support, 253, 700; feed on, 687.  
**alter**, -**tera**, -**terum**, gen. **alterius**, dat. **alterī**, pron. adj., *other* (of two); **alter** . . . **alter** = the one . . . the other, 5, 16.  
**altus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj. [**alō**], *lofty*; **nimis alta**, impossible, 85.  
**ambitiō**, -**ōnis**, f. [**ambiō**, **ambī** + **eō**], ambition, 59, 184, 1163.  
**ambitus**, -**ūs**, m. [**ambiō**], bribery, 325.  
**amicitia**, -**ae**, f. [**amō**], friendly alliance, 117; friendship, 186, 256; partiality, 961.  
**amicus**, -**ī**, m. [**amō**], friend, 111, 116, 165.  
**ā-mittō**, -**ere**, -**mīsī**, -**missum**, squander, 386; lose, 529, 614, 1118, 1334; relinquish, 624; be extinct, 1384.  
**amō** (1), *love*; be licentious, 210.

**amoenus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj. [**amō**], pleasant, 208.  
**amor**, -**ōris**, m. [**amō**], passion, 270.  
**ā-moveō**, -**ēre**, -**mōvī**, -**mōtum**, move away, 362.  
**amplexor** (1), [*freq.* of **amplector**, *twine about*], cherish, 1102.  
**amplius**, adv. [**amplus**], more, 394, 866; further, 909.  
**amplus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj., *full*; glorious, 150; great, 766.  
**an**, conj., or, 13.  
**anceps**, -**cipitis** [**ambi** + **caput**], adj., double-headed, 533.  
**angustiae**, -**ārum**, f. pl., *narrows*; narrow pass, 1333.  
**anima**, -**ae**, f. [**animus**], *breath*; soul, 37; life, 40, 624, 1334, 1384; existence, 407.  
**animadvortō**, -**ere**, -**tī**, -**sum** [**animus** + **advortō**, with **ad** or **in** with acc.], *turn attention to*; chastise, 1026, 1071.  
**animal**, -**ālis**, n. [**anima**]; animal, 1.  
**animus**, -**ī**, m., *breath*; mind, 5, 57, 70; I. 62, 368, 373; character, 82; longing, 85; nature, 90, 209, 935; principle, 214; thoughts, 242; brain, 288; resolution, 575; will, 675; feeling, 704, 968; disposition, 711; passion, 729; confidence, 766; spirit, 900, 1361; courage, 1149, 1298, 1341; soul, 1198; **animī virtūs** = mental prowess, 26; **aequō animō** = readily, 52; **cōnsciūs animus** = conscience, 254; **mē animus fallit** = I am mistaken, 409; **cōnfirmātō animō** = take courage, 850; **sī**

- maximē animus ferat** = how-ever much we may desire, 1307;  
**animī vīs** = valor, 1382.  
**annus, -ī, m.**, year, 119, 389.  
**annuus, -a, -um, adj.** [**annus**], for the year, 124.  
**ante**: (1) as adv., *before*, 358; (2) as prep. with acc., *before*, 548.  
**anteā, adv.** [**ante-eā**], formerly, 322; previously, 372, 456.  
**ante-capiō, -ere, -cēpī, -captum**, anticipate, 241; provide before-hand, 598; forestall, 1241.  
**ante-hāc, adv.**, before this, 482.  
**anxius, -a, -um, adj.** [**angō**], troubled, 847.  
**aperiō, -ire, aperuī, apertum** [**ab + pario**], disclose, 434, 764, 864, 1220, 1300; explain, 832; open, 1308.  
**ap-pellō (1)**, call, 121; call by name, 300; address, 360; name, 913; beseech, 1100.  
**ap-petēns, -entis, adj.**, seeking for, 83.  
**ap-petō, -ere, -ivī or -īī, -ītum**, seek for, 258.  
**ap-probō (1)**, favor, 984.  
**apud**, prep. with acc., among, 161, 321; in the hands of, 382; at the house of, 661; in the time of, 1173.  
**aquila, -ae, f.**, *eagle*; standard, 1349.  
**āra, -ae, f.**, *seat*; altar, 1094, 1357.  
**arbiter, -trī, m.**, *one that goes to*; witness, 361.  
**arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -ītum**, *drag towards*; invite, 763; summon, 1159, 1370.  
**ārdēns, -entis, adj.**, *burning*; passionate, 84.  
**arduus, -a, -um, adj.**, *steep*; difficult, 48; hard to reach, 136.  
**argentum, -ī, n.**, *bright metal*; silver, 619.  
**arma, -ōrum, n. pl.**, *fittings*; arms, 115, 134; armor, 782; arms of defense, 1066; **ab armīs discēdere** = lay down arms, 630, 667; **in armīs esse** = serve in arms, 696, 1020; **arma capere** = take up arms, 1164.  
**armātus, -a, -um, adj.**: **armātī, -ōrum, m. pl.** [**arma**], armed men, 341.  
**armō (1)**, [**arma**], arm; equip with arms, 1262.  
**arō (1)**, *plow*; cultivate, 34.  
**ar-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum** [**ad + regō**], excite, 729.  
**ars, artis, f.** [cf. **arma**], method, 29; purpose, 41; practice, 58, 91, 243; quality, 165, 197; traits (pl.), 182.  
**artē, adv.** [**arceō**], in close array, 1344.  
**a-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus** [**ad + scandō**], *climb up*; mount, 139; go up, 1245.  
**asper, -era, -erum, adj.**, *repellent*; rough, 136, 1343; desperate, 178, 1165; discouraging, 400; disastrous, 502; disagreeable, 758; rugged, 1276.  
**aspernor (1)**, [**ab + spernor**], scorn, 57.  
**astūtia, -ae, f.**, *cunning*, 492.  
**at, conj.**, but, 112, 155, 227; on the other hand, 1233; **at enim** = but surely, 1033.  
**atque (ac), conj.**, *and also*; and, 3, 46; than, 705.

**atrōcitās, -ātis**, f. [atrōx], enormity, 439.  
**atrōx, -ōcis**, adj., *black-faced*; perilous, 538; dreadful, 995.  
**at-tendō, -ere, -tendī, tentum** [ad + tendō], consider, 1204.  
**at-tentē**, adv. [ad + tendō], carefully, 1140.  
**at-terō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītum** [ad + terō], destroy, 284.  
**auctor, -ōris**, m., *promoter*; informant, 453.  
**auctōritās, -ātis**, f. [auctor], power, 380; influence, 718; weight, 763.  
**audācia, -ae**, f. [audāx], forwardness, 56; boldness, 166, 475, 1064; daring, 304; effrontery, 329, 444; hardihood, 1296; courage, 1381.  
**audācter**, adv. [audeo], boldly, 1319.  
**audāx, -ācis**, adj. [audeo], daring, 82.  
**audeo, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., be eager**; dare, 171; venture, 368.  
**audiō, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum**, *give ear*; hear, 373, 867.  
**augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum**, *increase*, 91; improve, 108; develop, 122; strengthen, 597, 1081.  
**auris, -is**, f., *ear*, 1298.  
**aut**, conj., *again*; or, 41, 66; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or, 619.  
**autem**, postpositive conj. [aut], however, 352; **porrō autem** = while on the other hand, 846.  
**auxilium, -ī**, n. [augeo], help, 16, 111, 633, etc.; aid, 116.  
**avāritia, -ae**, f. [avidus], greed, 57, 93, 161, etc.; avarice, 753.

**avidus, -a, -um**, adj., *eager*, 141.  
**ā-vortō, -ere, -tī, -sum**, turn away, 1326.

## B

**barbarī, -ōrum**, m. pl., *stammerer, prattler*; barbarian, 352.  
**bellicōsus, -a, -um**, adj. [bellum], warlike, 746.  
**bellum, -ī**, n., *duel*; war, 22; **bellum gerere** = wage war, 295, 541, 569; **bellum facere** = wage war, 466.  
**bēlua, -ae**, f., *brute*, 6.  
**bene**, adv. [bonus], *well*, 1080; ably, 1125; **bene facere** = be of service, 43; **bene facta** = good deeds, 158; **bene cōsulere** = adopt good resolutions, 1171.  
**beneficium, -ī**, n., *well-doing*; favor, 117, 1223; kindness, 172; service, 587.  
**bīnī, -ae, -a**, distrib. num. adj., *two each*, 124, 394.  
**bonum, -ī**, n. [bonus], goodness, 161; property (pl.), 529, 1119, 1321; advantage, 809.  
**bonus, -a, -um** [melior, optumus], adj., *good*, 33, 160; noble, 41; valuable, 65; respectable, 272; worth having, 412; honorable, 1037; superl. best, 98, 191; **bonī** = the great, 51; the good, 128, 1070; good men, 347, 424; patricians, 896; good citizens, 1124; **optumus quisque** = best men, 32; every good man, 157, 635; **bona patria** = inheritance, 249.  
**brevī**, adv. [brevis], in short while, 106, 131.  
**brevis, -e**, adj., *short*, 8.

## C

**cadāver, -eris, n.** [**cadō**], corpse, 992, 1387.

**cadō, -ere, cecidī, fall;** occur, 364.

**caedēs, -is, f., a splitting;** murder, 79, 336, 483; slaughter, 802, 896; massacre, 1193.

**caelātus, -a, -um, adj., engraved;** embossed, 211.

**caelum, -ī, n., hollow;** heaven, 572; sky, 885, 1199.

**calamitās, -ātis, f., injury;** ruin, 731; straits, 822.

**calamitōsus, -a, -um, adj. [calamitās],** disastrous, 889.

**cālō, ōnis, m., camp-servant,** 1394.

**calumnia, -ae, f., trickery;** spiteful accusation, 554.

**camera, -ae, f., bend;** vaulted roof, 1247.

**campus, -ī, m., plain;** Campus Martius, 500.

**canis, -is, hound;** dog, 261.

**canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, sing;** **sīgna canere** = to give signal for battle, 1338.

**capessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum [capiō],** **rem pūblicam capessere** = engage in public affairs, 1104.

**capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take;** control, 87; take, 145, 1098; ensnare, 260; captivate, 270; form, 294; take up, 515, 609; secure, 539; take in, 547; adopt, 769, 1077; **arma capere** = take up arms, 1164.

**capitālis, -e, adj. [caput], rēs capitālis** = capital crime, 667, 1195.

**captō (1), [freq. of capiō],** grasp at, 363.

**caput, -itis, n., head;** **suprā caput esse** = be close at hand, 1160.

**carcer, -eris, m., prison,** 1243.

**careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum, shear;** abstain from, 243.

**carptim, adv., picked to pieces;** in sections, 68.

**cārus, -a, -um, adj., beloved;** dear, 479.

**castra, -ōrum, n. pl., camp,** 133.

**cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō],** failure, 656; misfortune, 751, 987; chance, 1262.

**caterva, -ae, f., crowd,** 247.

**causa, -ae, f., defense;** ground, 22; reason, 285, 862, 1108; cause, 1271; **causā cognitā** = after judicial investigation, 785; **causā,** with gen. = for the sake of, 238, 577, 934; because of, 1353.

**caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, with ab, be wary;** be on guard, 1095; take care not, 1334.

**-ce,** an inseparable strengthening demonstrative particle.

**cēdō, -ere, cēssī, cēssum [cf. cadō],** abandon, 171; submit, 637; yield, 1314; **prōsperē cēdere** = succeed, 500, cf. 1171.

**celebrō (1), celebrate;** make famous, 148; (pass.) be famed, 153.

**celeritās, -ātis, f. [celer],** *swiftness;* speedy action, 809.

**cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsum, estimate, rate,** 957; move, 985, 1082; propose, 1129; suppose, 1162; advise, 1201.

**cēnsor, -ōris, m. [cēnseō],** censor, 443.

**centum, indecl. num. adj., one hundred,** 560.

- centuriō, -ōnis**, m. [**centum**], commander of hundred, captain, centurion, 1345.
- cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum**, *decide*; observe, 28; see, 1381.
- certāmen, -inis**, n. [**certō**], dispute, 12; rivalry, 138, 729; contest, 622.
- certō**, adv., *with certainty*; surely, 1011.
- certō** (1), [*freq.* of **cernō**], vie, 164; strive, 729; vie with, 1236; contend, 1317; fight, 1357.
- certus, -a, -um**, adj. [**cernō**], certain, 366; sure, 771; **prō certō** = positively, 273; **prō certō habēre** = be sure, 1138; **certum, -ī**, n. = certainty, 315.
- cēterum**, conj., *for the rest*; still, 313; but, 373; for the rest, 1036.
- cēterus, -a -um**, adj. (sing. not in good use), *the rest*; the other, 1, 182, 838; others, 61; all others, 112; the rest, 257, 378.
- circiter**, prep. with acc., and adv. [**circus**], about, 299.
- circum**, prep. with acc., and adv. [**circus**], about, 247; around, 497; round about, 552.
- circum-eō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum**, go around, 931; go the rounds, 1355.
- circum-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**, pass around, 432.
- circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum**, waylay, 287; involve in, 423; beset, 591, 635, 1074; surround, 1186.
- citerior, -ius**, adj., *on this side*; nearer, 343, 778.
- cito**, adv. [**cieō** = *move*], quickly, 837.
- citus, -a, -um** [**cieō**], adj., quick, 279.
- cīvilis, -e**, adj. [**cīvis**], within the state, 79; of citizens, 253; civil, 293, 875.
- cīvis, -is**, m. and f., *commoner*; citizenship, 108; citizen, 163, 205; fellow-countryman, 812.
- cīvitās, -ātis**, f. [**cīvis**], state, 92.
- clādēs, -is**, f., *a breaking*; disaster, 731, 1302; massacre, 1051.
- clāmor, -ōris**, m., *a calling*; shouts, 836, 1365.
- clārus, -a, -um**, adj. [*cf.* **clamo**], glorious, 10; famous, 44, 713; evident, 936; illustrious, 1020, 1251; noble, 1200; celebrated, 1224.
- claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum**, *block up*, conceal, 185; encompass, 1288.
- cliēns, -entis**, m., *hearer*; follower, 353; defendant, 498, 940.
- co-** (**com-**, **con-**), A. *with*; B. : 1. of mutual or reciprocal acts, acts affecting a group; 2. intensive, with the connotation of *mutual* replaced by *thoroughly*.
- co-aequō** (1), level, 393.
- co-alēscō, -ere, -aluī, -alitum** [*dimin.* of **alō**], unite, 106.
- co-arguō, -ere, -uī**, prove guilty, 869.
- (**coepiō, -ere**, obsolete), **coepī, coeptus**, *lay hold together*, begin, 21, 127, 178.
- co-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum** [**com + arceō**], control, 541.
- cōgitō** (1), [**co + agitō**], **fac cōgitēs** = reflect, 822.
- cognātus, -ī**, m., *begotten together*; kinsman, 1397.

**cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum** [co + (g)nōscō], *know with*, see, 223; leak out, 336; know, 345; find, 367; recognize, 600, 1398; acknowledge, 648, 876; become known, 774, 854; learn, 775, 946; take in, 837; **causā cognitā** = after judicial investigation, 785.

**cohors, -hortis, f., band;** cohort, 1257, 1363.

**co-hortor (1), encourage,** 360; urge, 428, 838.

**col-lēga, -ae, m. [com + legō],** colleague, 421.

**col-locō (1), [com + locō],** station, 834.

**col-lubet, -ēre, -lubuit (-lubitum est), [com + lubet],** be pleasing, 991.

**colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, till,** 65; cultivate, 160.

**colōnia, -ae, f. [calō],** colony, 310, 531; settlement, 1313.

**colōs (color), -ōris, m., covering;** complexion, 278.

**com-itātus, -ūs, m. [com + eō],** retinue, 831.

**com-itium, -ī, n. [com + eō],** place of assembly; **com-itia, -ōrum, n. pl.,** election, 460.

**com-meātus, -ūs, m.,** supplies, 1313.

**com-memorō (1),** recall, 1361.

**com-mendātiō, -ōnis, f. [com-mendō],** commendation, 644.

**com-mendō (1), [com + mandō],** intrust, 659.

**comminus, adv. [com + manus],** hand to hand, 1367.

**com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,**

commit, 475; **proelium committere** = join battle, 1365.

**com-modō (1), [commodus],** furnish, 283.

**com-modum, -ī, n. [commodus],** advantage, 187.

**com-moror (1),** tarry, 661; wait, 1338.

**com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** stir, 580.

**com-mūnicō (1), [commūnis],** with **cum**, share, 332; identify, 1271.

**com-mūnis, -e, adj.,** *having joint services*; in common, 6.

**com-parō (1),** arrange, 488; make ready, 558; provide, 985.

**com-periō, -īre, -perī, -pertum [com + pariō],** find out, 24, 664; prove, 266; clear up, 440; **com-pertum habēre** = know, 536, 1293.

**com-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum,** fill, 993; fill up, 1257.

**complexus, -ūs, m.,** *twining*; embrace, 990.

**com-plūrēs, -plūra, gen. -ium, adj. pl.,** very many, 232, 311; a number, 426, 735; several, 454, 784.

**compositē, adv. [com + ponō],** in a skillful manner, 987; skillfully, 1125.

**com-probō (1),** verify, 939.

**con-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum,** pass under, 376.

**con-cidō, -ere, -cidī [com + cadō],** fall, 1386.

**con-citō (1), [freq. of con-cieō],** sting, 648; stir up, 852.

**con-clāmō (1),** cry out, 906.



- con-cordia**, -ae, f. [con + cor], harmony, 107, 160.
- con-cupiscō**, -ere, -cupīvī, -cupītum [con + cupiō], covet, 198, 1053.
- con-currō**, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, with **ad**, flock, 1269; rush together, 1366.
- concutiō**, -ere, -cussī, -cussum [com + quatiō], alarm, 462.
- condemnō** (1), [com + damnō], convict, 667, 1027.
- con-diciō**, -ōnis, f. [con + dīcō], condition, 374; terms, 414.
- con-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum [con + -dō], found, 100, 340.
- con-dōnō** (1), with acc. and dat., pardon, be indulgent, 1111.
- con-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, hire, 1131.
- cōn-fertus**, -a, -um [part. of cōn-ferciō], adj., thick, 1379.
- cōn-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [com + faciō], carry out, 843; end, 972; fight, 1381.
- cōn-fidō**, -ere, -fīsus sum, *semi-dep.*, rely on, 290, 1168; be assured, 320.
- cōn-firmō** (1), strengthen, 602; make, 819; cōnfirmātō animō = take courage, 850.
- cōn-fiteor**, -ērī, -fessus sum [com + fateor], confess, 1194.
- cōn-fligō**, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, fight, 1291.
- cōn-flō** (1), contract, 249, 470; rouse, 933.
- cōn-fluō**, -ere, -fluxī, flow together, 693.
- cōn-fodiō**, -ere, -fōdī, -fossū, assassinate, 523; run through, 1380.
- con-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [com + iaciō = *throw*], with **in** and acc., cast, 785.
- coniūrātī**, -ōrum, m. plu. [com + iūrō], conspirators, 1139.
- con-iūrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [com + iūrō], conspiracy, 72, 302.
- con-iūrō** (1), plot, 322; form a conspiracy, 1157.
- cōn-scientia**, -ae, f. [com + sciō], consciousness, 90, 646; conscience, 277.
- cōn-scius**, -a, -um, adj. [com + scio], concerned in, 436, 681; guilty of, 483; feeling guilty of, 638; cōnscius animus = conscience, 254.
- cōn-scribō**, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, levy, 1353.
- cōn-scrīptus**, -ī, m. [com + scrībō]: patrēs cōnscrīptī = senators, 960.
- cōn-senēscō**, -ere, -senūī, *grow old*; waste away, 389.
- cōn-servō** (1), preserve, 657.
- cōn-sīderō** (1), [com + sīdus = *group of stars*], reflect, 374; consider, 823; weigh carefully, 1036; contemplate, 1092; look upon, 1329.
- cōn-sīdō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *sit together*; encamp, 1284.
- con-silium**, -ī, n. [cf. consul], plan, 64, 29; plot, 311, 862; design, 342; measure, 534, 984, 1077; determination, 535; precedent, 646; course, 768; deliberation, 782; reason, 826; situation, 837; shrewdness, 1063; purpose, 1219.
- cōn-spiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, attract attention (pass.), 139, see 750.

**cōn-stanter**, adv. [**com** + **stō**], uniformly, 27.

**cōn-stantia**, -ae, f. [**com** + **stō**], steadfastness, 1228.

**cōn-sternō**, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum, bridge over, 233.

**cōnstituō**, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum [**com** + **statuō**], determine, 500; decide, 790; appoint, 828; station, 1344.

**cōn-stō**, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrūm; **mihi cōnstābat**, was evident, 1210.

**cōn-suēscō**, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *accustom*; be accustomed, 434.

**cōn-suētūdō**, -inis, f. [**cōn-suēscō**], *practice*, 651; **stuprī vetus cōnsuētūdō** = unbecoming intimacy of long standing, 447.

**cōn-sul**, -ulis, m., *consul*, 1020; **cōn-sul dēsīgnātus** = consul elect, 951.

**cōn-sulāris**, -e, adj. [**cōnsul**], of consular rank; **cōnsulāris**, -is, m. [**cōnsul**], man of consular rank, 634.

**cōnsulātus**, -ūs, m. [**cōnsul**], consulship, 295.

**cōn-sulō**, -ere, -suluī, -sultum [**cōnsul**], consider, 14; have regard for, 625; put the question, 907; deliberate, 973, 1149, 1188; be mindful of, 982; **male cōnsulere** = take bad measures, 967; **bene cōnsulere**, adopt good resolutions, 1171.

**cōn-sultō** (1), [*freq.* of **cōnsulō**], take thought for, 120; deliberate, 961; deliberate on, 1096.

**cōn-sultum**, -ī, n. [**cōnsulō**], consideration, 14; decree, 785; resolution, 806,

**cōn-sūmō**, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, squander, 220.

**con-tāgiō**, -ōnis, f. [**com** + **tangō**], contagion, 189.

**con-temnō**, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum, value lightly, 1186.

**con-tendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, work, 197; hasten, 664; fight, 1206.

**con-tentiō**, -ōnis, f. [**contendō**], controversy, 639; struggle, 721.

**con-terō**, -ere, -trīvī, -trītum, waste, 65.

**con-tinentia**, -ae, f. [**com** + **teneō**], restraint, 30.

**con-tinuō** (1), [*cf.* **contineō**], build adjoining, 394.

**cōntiō**, -ōnis, f. [*for* **conventiō**, **com** + **veniō**]; assembly, 791, 1292.

**contrā**, adv., *in comparison with*; on the contrary, 228; **contrā ac** = different from what, 1373; prep. with acc., contrary to, 37, 207; in opposition to, 270, 1086; against the interests of, 949; **contrā rem publicam sentire** = to entertain disloyalty toward the state, 497; **contrā imperium** = against orders, 1174.

**contumēlia**, -ae, f., *violent swelling*; insult, 648, 917.

**con-turbō** (1), disquiet, 706; disturb, 916.

**con-veniō**, -īre, -vērī, -ventum, *come together*, 104, 341; assemble, 304; interview, 811; it is consistent (*impers.*), 1031.

**con-ventus**, -ūs, m. [**com** + **veniō**], meeting, 429, 550.

**con-vincō**, -ere, -vīcī, -victum, prove guilty, 251, 1030, 1192,

**con-vivium**, -ī, n. [**com** + **vivō**], banquet, 135.

**con-vocō** (1), summon, 303; convene, 947.

**con-vortō**, -ere, -vortī, -vorum, turn, 1165; **sē convortere** = degenerate, 124.

**cōperiō**, -īre, -ruī, -rtum [**co** + **operiō**], cover; steep in, 442.

**cōpia**, -ae, f. [**co** + **ops**], aggregation; abundance, 42, 201; numbers, 144, 531, 1069, 1146; supply, 155; opportunity, 315; resources, 653; force, 789, 1269, 1288; wealth, 889; store, 966; army, 1255; **ex omnī cōpiā** = of the whole number, 1261.

**corpus**, -oris, n., shape; body, 4.

**cor-rigō**, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum [**com** + **regō**], set right, 1185.

**cor-ripiō**, -ere, -ripiū, -reptum [**com** + **ripiō**], seize, 334.

**cor-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum [**com** + **rumpō**], waste, 805.

**cor-ruptus**, -a, -um, adj. [**com** + **rumpō**], ruined, 59; corrupted, 92; corrupt, 215, 245.

**co-tidiānus**, -a, -um, adj., daily, 256, 890.

**crēdibilis**, -e, adj. [**crēdō**], credible, 81, 232.

**crēditum**, -ī, n. [**crēdō**], loan, 483.

**crēdō**, -ere, **crēdidī**, **crēditum**, put trust in; believe, 273; put trust in, 569; think, 740, 849; dare say, 1126.

**crēscō**, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētum** [cf. **creō**], grow, 131, 189; grow strong, 174; develop, 181; increase, 320; grow great, 971, 1048.

**crīmen**, -inis, n., a charge, 635.

**crīminor** (1), [**crīmen**], denounce, 712.

**cruciātus**, -ūs, m., crucifixion; suffering, 1007, 1022.

**crūdēlis**, -ē, adj. [**cruor**], cruel, 191, 205; unrelenting, 575; severe, 1015; ruthless, 1177.

**crūdēlitās**, -ātis, f. [**cruor**], cruelty, 183, 611; harshness, 1006.

**crūdēlīter**, adv. [**cruor**], cruelly, 721.

**cruentus**, -a, -um, adj. [**cruor**], bloody, 875, 1336.

**cruor**, -ōris, m., blood, 992.

**culpa**, -ae, f., guilt, 256, 647.

**cultus**, -ūs, m. [**colō**], indulgence, 236; style, 695; clothing, 890.

**cum**, prep. with abl., with, 6, 102; against, 922.

**cum**, conj., although, 59, 395, 975; when, 374.

**cunctor** (1), delay, 827, 1160; hesitate, 1177.

**cūnctus**, -a, -um, adj. (mostly plu.), joined with; all, 148, 177.

**cupidē**, adv. [**cupiō**], eagerly, 759.

**cupiditās**, -ātis, f. [**cupiō**],avarice, 19, 426; desire, 84.

**cupīdō**, -inis, f. [**cupiō**], desire, 61, 239; longing, 131; craving, 181.

**cupīdus**, -a, -um, adj. [**cupiō**], eager for, 528, 884.

**cupiō**, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, desire, 86; covet, 203, 221.

**cūra**, -ae, f., care; duty, 121; worry, 687; anxiety, 844, 1024; **cūrae habēre** = be mindful of, 429.

**cūria**, -ae, f., court; senate house, 339.

**cūrō** (1), [**cūra**], care for, 167; take charge, 1348.

**cūstōdia**, -ae, f. [**cūstōs**], custody, 948; in **liberis cūstōdiis** = under individual guardians, 878; in **cūstōdiis**, in custody, 952, 1130.

**cūstōs**, -ōdis, *guard*, 856.

## D

**damnō** (1), [**damnum**], condemn, 1076.

**damnum**, -ī, n., *loss*, 688.

**dē**, prep. with abl., *down, from*; concerning, 39, 51; about, 164, 323; of, 356, 1084; for, 689, 862; on, 1126, 1194; **dē imprōvisō** = unexpectedly, 523, 689; (in cpds.) from, away; = a negative; superlative force = completely.

**dēbeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum [**dē + habēō**], owe, 929.

**dēcernō**, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide, 64, 1034, 1140; decree, 538; vote, 908, 954; vote for, 940; determine on, 1018.

**decet**, -ēre, **decuit**, impers., *it is seemly*; it behooves, 2; it is fitting, 962; it is proper, 1005.

**dēclārō** (1), declare, 460.

**decorō** (1), [**decus**], adorn, 226.

**decōrus**, -a, -um, adj. [**decus**], splendid, 134.

**dēcrētum**, -ī, n. [**dē + cernō**], decision, 551, 803.

**decus**, -oris, n. [cf. **decet**], honor, 403, 1310; virtue, 479; moral dignity, 1233.

**dēdecus**, -oris, n., deed of shame, 691; **per dēdecus** = disgracefully, 386.

**dēdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, be a slave to, 35; give up, 244.

**dēducō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, conduct, 1243.

**dēfendō**, -ere, -fendī, -fēsum, shield, 659; protect, 718; defend, 839.

**dēfensiō**, -ōnis, f. [**dē + fendō**], defense, 645.

**dēfessus**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **dēfetiscor**], *tired*; enfeebled, 733.

**dēficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [**dē + faciō**], fail, 242.

**dēgustō** (1), taste of, 433.

**dēhinc**, adv., then, 49.

**dein** (**deinde**), adv. [**dē + inde**], then, 180, 594, 712, 839, 1257; secondly, 693.

**dēliciae**, -ārum, f. plu., *delight*; pleasurable indulgence, 574.

**dēlictum**, -ī, n. [**dēlinquō**], fault, 50; transgression, 1109; sin, 1149.

**dēligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum [**dē + legō**], choose, 119.

**dēlinquō**, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, transgress, 1000; do wrong, 1162.

**dēlūbrum**, -ī, n. [**dē + luō = wash off**], temple, 212; shrine, 225.

**dēmentia**, -ae, f. [**dē + mēns**], madness, 781, 1326.

**dēmissus**, -a, -um, adj. [**dē + mittō**], downcast, 582, 999.

**dēmittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, adjourn, 429; thrust into, 1249.

**dēmum**, adv. [superlative of **dē = downmost**], only, 39; **tum dēmum** = only then, 24; **is, ea, id dēmum** = that and that only, 230, 370.

**dēnegō** (1), refuse, 1230.

**dēnique**, adv., in short, 400.

**dē-prehendō** (or **deprendo**), -ere, -hendī, -hēnsūm, arrest, 831, 848; seize, 899; apprehend, 953, 1161.  
**dēpressus**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **dēprimō**], sunken, 1246.  
**dēscēnsus**, -ūs, m. [**dē** + **scandō**], the way down, 1284.  
**dē-serō**, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, abandon, 839.  
**dēsidia**, -ae, f. [**dē** + **sedeō**], sloth, 30, 64; inactivity, 1213.  
**dē-signō** (1), elect, 325; **cōnsul dē-signātus** = consul elect, 951, 1018.  
**dē-sum**, -esse, -fuī, be lacking, 197, 394; be wanting, 493.  
**dētineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**dē** + **teneō**], hold back, 67.  
**dētrīmentum**, -ī, n. [**dēterō** = *rub away*], harm, 539; loss, 887.  
**deus**, -ī, m., *bright (sky)*; god, 6, 164.  
**dē-vincō**, -ere, -vīcī, -victum, conquer, 1040.  
**dexter**, -tera, (-tra). -terum (-trum), adj., *on the right*, 1343.  
**diciō**, -ōnis, f. [**dīcō**], sway, 376.  
**dīco**, -ere, **dīxī**, **dictum**, *show*; speak, 44, 864; record, 50; talk, 158; tell, 324; claim, 932; mention, 1282; **sententiās dīcere** = express opinion, 987.  
**dictitō** (1), [*freq.* of **dīcō**], maintain, 435.  
**dictum**, -ī, n. [**dīcō**], word, 49; **male dictum** = abuse, 424; in-vective, 589.  
**diēs**, -ēī, m. or f., *day*; time, 328, 804, 1034; **in diēs** = day by day, 89, 463; every day, 373; **prope, diem** = at a near day, 603, 1267.  
**dif-ficilis**, -e, adj. [**dis** + **facilis**], hard, troublesome, 759.

**dif-ficultās**, -ātis, f. [**difficilis**], desperate state, 1281.  
**dif-ficulter**, adv. [**difficilis**]: **haud difficulter** = easily, 259.  
**dif-fidō**, -ere, -fīsus sum [**dis** + **fidō**], lose confidence in, 574; despair of, 841.  
**dignitās**, -ātis, f. [**dīgnus**], honor, 649; self-respect, 982; rank, 1179, 1379; importance, 1225.  
**dīgnus**, -a, -um, adj., *worthy*; de-serving, 69; worthy, 654, 1039; becoming, 978; suitable, 983, 1231; fitting, 1252.  
**dī-lābor**, -ī, **lāpsus sum** [**dis** + **labor**], desert, 1276.  
**dī-lēctus**, -ūs, m. [**dis** + **legō**], levy, 668.  
**dīligentia**, -ae, f. [**dis** + **legō**], care, 1019.  
**dī-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [**dis** + **mittō**], dispatch, 505; send out, 780; let go, 975; discharge, 1081, 1163.  
**dīrimō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum [**dis** + **emō**], frustrate, 342.  
**dīruō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [**dis** + **ruō**], pull down, 396.  
**dis-**, inseparable prefix = asunder, apart, in two; intensive force; between, among, through.  
**dis-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, desert, 678; come off, 731, 927; go over to, 1240; withdraw, 1394; **ab armīs discēdere** = lay down arms, 630, 667.  
**dis-cernō**, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, determine, 481.  
**discō**, -ere, **didicī**, *learn*, 133.  
**discordia**, -ae, f. [**dis** + **cor**], strife, 79; disagreement, 162.

**dis-crīmen, -inis, n.** [**discernō**], distinction, 1152.

**dis-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum** [**dis + iaciō**], scatter, 1385.

**dis-pār, -paris, adj.**, unequal, 104.

**dis-persus, -a, -um, adj.** [part. of **dispergō**], scattered, 106.

**dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**, station, 946.

**dis-sentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum**, differ, 60.

**dis-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum**, discuss, 99, 1093; argue, 1010, 1019, 1126.

**dis-similis, -e, adj.**, different, 105.

**dis-simulātor, -ōris, m.**, dissembler, 83.

**dis-simulō** (1), dissemble, 577, 863; deny, 869.

**dis-solvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum**, dispel, 1023.

**dis-tribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtum**, apportion, 562, 1259.

**diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv.**, *by day* (very rare); for a long time, 12; long, 733.

**dius, -a, -um, adj.**, *divine*; **mē dius Fidius** = (so help) me the god of faith, 647.

**diūturnus, -a, -um, adj.** [**diū**], long, 566.

**di-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -volsum** [**dis + vellō**], forcibly separate, 989.

**dīves, -itis, adj.**, *rich*; rich man, 1234.

**dī-vidō, -ere, -visī, -vīsum** [**dis + vid-** = *splī*], apportion, 795.

**dīvinus, -a, -um, adj.** [**dīvus**], *divine*, 221.

**dīvitiae, -ārum, f. plu.** [**dīves**],

wealth, 9, 140, 179; riches, 142, 234, 973; affluence, 391.

**dī-vorsē, adv.** [**dis + vortō**], widely separated, 1385.

**dī-vorsus, -a, -um, adj.** [**dis + vortō**], separately, 372; different, 940, 1127; **dīvorsī** = with opposite views, 18; **dīversa inter sē** = opposite to one another, 93.

**dō, dare, dedī, datum**, *give*, 116; assign, 346; write, 819; assure, 894; offer, 1266; **poenās dare** = be punished, 326, 439; pay the penalty, 1047, 1176; **dare operam** = see to it, 538, 1053; endeavor, 777; **negōtium dare** = commission, 743; **datā atque acceptā fidē** = exchange pledges, 818; **mandāta verbīs dat** = send verbal message, 825; **sē dare** = surrender, 842.

**doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum**, *show*; point out, 302, 514; show, 865; in-form, 897.

**doctus, -a, -um, adj.** [**doceō**], trained in, 477.

**documentum, -ī, n.** [**doceō**], proof, 167.

**doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum**, *hark*; deplore, 751.

**dolor, -ōris, m.** [**doleō**], distress, 528.

**dolus, -ī, m.**, *trick*; fraud, 197; craftiness, 492; plot, 525.

**dominātiō, -ōnis, f.** [**dominus**], rule, 86; tyranny, 123; absolute rule, 312; unrestricted power, 364; supremacy, 529.

**dominor** (1), [**dominus**, cf. **domō**], have power, 22; rule, 147, 619; hold sway, 965.

**domō**, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tame*; master, 137; subdue, 175; overcome, 673.

**domus**, -ūs, f., *building*; house, 203, 223, 399; home, 594, 991; loc.

**domī** = at home, 96, 113, 160.

**dōnum**, -ī, n. [**dō**], gift, 1231.

**dormiō** (4), *sleep*, 238.

**dubitō** (1), *doubt*; hesitate, 272, 519, 804; be in doubt, 847; waver, 1161.

**dubius**, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain*, 178, 728; **rēs dubiae** = critical matters, 961; **in dubiō esse** = be at stake, 1105.

**ducentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [**duō** + **centum**], two hundred, 561.

**dūcō**, -ere, **dūxī**, **ductum**, *draw*; consider, 53, 218.

**ductō** (1), [*freq.* of **dūcō**], lead, 206, 319.

**dum**, conj., while, 139, 605; provided, 263, 759; provided only, 88.

**duo**, **duae**, **duo**, num. adj., *two*, 165.

**duo-decim**, indecl. num. adj., twelve, 796.

**dux**, **ducis**, m. and f. [**dūcō**], leader, 101; commander, 1159.

## E

**ē**, see **ex**, *from*; out of.

**ē-dīcō**, -ere, **-dīxī**, **-dictum**, declare, 895.

**ē-dō**, -ere, **-didī**, **-ditum**, publish, 581.

**ē-doceō**, -ēre, -uī, **-doctum**, teach, 184, 282; inform, 829.

**ē-dūcō**, -ere, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, (of a sword) draw, 1061.

**ef-fēminō** (1), [**ex** + **fēminō**], weaken, 200.

**ef-fētus**, -a, -um, adj. [**ex** + **fētus**], exhausted, 1215.

**ef-ficiō**, -ere, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** [**ex** + **faciō**], make, 9, 257; contrive, 494; cause, 783.

**ef-fugiō**, -ere, **fūgī**, **-fugitum** [**ex** + **fugiō**], with acc., escape, 756.

**egēns**, -entis, adj. [**egeō**], needy, 329, 701; in want, 611.

**egeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *need*, 16; lack, 1064.

**egestās**, -ātis, f. [**egeō**], poverty, 254, 383, 405; begging, 688; want, 1151; lack, 1307.

**ego**, **meī**, pers. pron., I; pl. **nōs**, we; **mē animus fallit** = I am mistaken, 409.

**ē-gredior**, -ī, **ēgressus sum**, leave, 854, 937.

**ē-gregius**, -a, -um, adj. [**ex** + **grex**], illustrious, 458; extraordinary, 643; remarkable, 928, 1210; distinguished, 1175.

**ē-leganter**, adv. [**ex** + **legō**], gracefully, 447.

**ē-loquentia**, -ae, f. [**ex** + **loquor**], eloquence, 84; power of expression, 1221.

**ē-mentior**, -īrī, **-mēnsus sum**, *lie*; spread false reports, 931.

**emō**, -ere, **ēmī**, **ēptum**, *take*; buy, 396.

**ē-morior**, -ī, **-mortuus sum**, die, 384.

**ēn**, interj., *lo*, 402.

**enim**, postpositive conj., *for*; **at enim** = but sooth, 1033.

**ē-nitēscō**, -ere, **-nitūī**, —, shine forth, 1232.

**ē-numerō** (1), relate, 989.

**ē-nūntiō** (1), disclose, 525.

**eō, ire, ivī** or **ii, itum**, *go*; **obviam ire** = go to meet, 114; **perditum ire** = bent upon ruining, 676, 1124; **pedibus in sententiam ire** = adopt the opinion, 956.

**eō**, adv. [**is**], (abl. sense) for this reason, 69, 435; therefore, 243, 367; (terminal sense) thither, 304; there, 857; to the place, 1364; **eō magis** = all the more, 899.

**eōdem**, adv. [**idem**], (old dat.), to the same, 68; to the same place, 860.

**eques, -itis**, m. [**equus**], knight, 520, 933; pl., cavalry, 349; troopers, 352.

**equester, -tris, -tre**, *adj.* [**equus**], of knights, 308.

**e-quidem**, adv., for my part, 1006; indeed, 1118.

**equus, -ī**, m., *horse*, 134, 261, 1146; **equō** = on horseback, 1355.

**ēripiō, -ere, -uī, ēreptum** [**ex** + **rapiō**], take away, 227, 626, 1027; confiscate, 703; save, 846; rescue, 886, 941; snatch away, 1132.

**ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum**, rush out, 802.

**et, and**, 4; **et . . . et** = both . . . and, 14, 45.

**et-enim**, conj., *and sooth*; for, 390.

**et-iam**, adv. and conj., *and now*; even, 19, 43, 393; still, 255, 259.

**ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum**, ensue, 166; result, 502; betide, 1035; come to pass, 1098.

**ē-ventus, -ūs**, m. [**ēveniō**], result, 202; issue, 705.

**ē-vocātus, -ī**, m. [**ēvocō**], veteran, 1345.

**ex** (**ē**), prep. with abl., *from, out from*, 62, 97, 191; of, 111, 694,

898, 925; in accordance with, 148, 260, 872; according to, 187, 490; because of, 219; for, 266; from among, 282; from state of, 566; as the result of, 639, 696; with, 1121; on account of, 1281; **ex omnī cōpiā** = of the whole number, 1261; (in cpds.) from, out of, away, forth; intensive = completely.

**ex-aedificō** (1), build, 224.

**ex-aequō** (1), equal, 49; equalize, 1340.

**ex-agitō** (1), [*freq.* of **ex** + **agō**], disturb, 254, 1050; excite, 537, 712; antagonize, 905.

**ex-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**, with abl., retire, 170.

**ex-celsus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **excellō**]: in **excelsō** = in a lofty station, 1002.

**ex-cieō** and **ex-ciō, -īre** (**ēre**), **-cīvī, -cītum** and **-citum**, torture, 278; stir, 699.

**ex-citō** [*fre.* of **excieō**], arouse, 1297.

**ex-emplum, -ī**, n. [**ex** + **emō**], copy, 641, 820; precedent, 1039.

**ex-erceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citum** [**ex-erceō**], develop, 18; waste, 80; train, 157; engage in, 163; disturb, 194; make use of, 721; entertain, 923; use, 1013.

**ex-ercitātus, -a, -um**, adj. [**ex-erceō**], trained, 944.

**ex-ercitus, -ūs**, m. [**ex-erceō**], army, 206; force, 535.

**ex-īstumō** (1), [**ex** + **aestumō**], regard, 74; think, 264, 437; suppose, 586; consider, 1085.

**ex-ītum, -ī**, n. [**ex** + **eō**], end, 1253.



**ex-itus**, -ūs, m. [**ex** + **eō**], out-come, 752.

**ex-optō** (1), desire earnestly, 196, 293, 686, 1232.

**ex-orior**, -īrī, -ortus **sum**, arise, 836; spring, 1037.

**ex-ōrnō** (1), provide, 663.

**ex-pediō** (4), [**ex** + **pēs**], adjust, 390.

**ex-peditus**, -a, -um, adj. [**ex** + **pēs**], light-armed, 1286, 1369.

**ex-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive away, 692.

**ex-pergīscor**, -ī, -perrēctus **sum** [**ex** + **pergō**], bestir oneself, 402, 1103.

**ex-perior**, -īrī, -pertus **sum**, make trial of, 501.

**ex-pers**, -tis, adj. [**ex** + **pars**], deprived of, 612.

**ex-plānō** (1), explain, 75.

**ex-pleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, glut, 1057.

**ex-plōrō** (1), examine, 1362; **ex-plōrātus**, -a, -um, certain, 302.

**ex-pūrgō** (1), free from censure, 577.

**ex-quīrō**, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum [**ex** + **quaerō**], seek for, 238; seek out, 942.

**ex-sanguis**, -e, adj., pale, 278; exhausted, 733.

**ex-secrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [**exsecror**], solemn oath, 433.

**ex-secor** (1), [**ex** + **sacer**], curse, 885.

**ex-sequor**, -sequī, -secūtus **sum**, execute, 794; follow up, 1069; perform, 1372.

**ex-silium**, -ī, n. [**exsul**], exile, 637; banishment, 1028, 1076, 1320.

**ex-spectō** (1), await, 705, 755; want, 1167; look for, 1322.

**ex-struō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, bridge, 392.

**ex-superō** (1), exceed, 985.

**ex-ter**, or **ex-terus**, -a, -um [comp. **exterior**; superl. **extrēmus**, -a, -um], adj. [comp. form of **ex**], farthest off, 295; **extrēma aetās** = declining years, 926; **extrēmum**, -ī, expedient, 501; **in extrēmō situm esse**, be on the verge, 1120.

**ex-tollō**, -ere, —, —, praise, 127, 685; laud, 154.

**ex-torqueō**, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum, wrest from, 734.

**extrā**, prep. with acc., *on the outside*; unconnected with, 735.

**extrēmus**, see **exter**.

## F

**facētia**, -ārum, f. pl. [cf. **facētus** = *shining*], wit, 487.

**faciēs**, -ēī, f. [cf. **facētus**], features, 280; appearance, 566, 1248.

**facile**, adv. [**faciō**], 29, 106, 179; **facile habēre** = be an easy life, 688.

**facilis**, -e, adj. [**faciō**], easy, 52.

**facilitās**, -ātis, f. [**faciō**], graciousness, 1228.

**facinus**, -oris, n. [**faciō**], deed, 41; adventure, 73; exploit, 140; crime, 205, 250, 442; wicked deed, 242, 692, 887; criminal, 246; conspiracy, 275; enterprise, 368; undertaking, 436; ruinous deed, 603; outrage, 1194; achievement, 1204.

**faciō**, -ere, **fēcī**, **factum**, *put*; do, 45, 52, 153, 230, 1085; appoint, 125; perform, 140; act, 158, 950,

1086; **commit**, 205, 269; **make**, 207; **construct**, 225; **fix**, 470; **plan**, 500; **form**, 559; **force**, 609; **give**, 910; **build up**, 1080; **commit**, 1097; **accomplish**, 1204; **bene facere** = be of service, 43; **initium facere** = begin, 76, 516; **nihil reliquū facere** = leave nothing, 214, 532; **facinus facere** = commit a crime, 355; **initium agundī facere** = make a beginning of operations, 424; **vorsūs facere** = write verses, 485; **fac cōgitēs** = do reflect, 821; **grege factō** = in a body, 945; **infestōs facere** = embitter, 994; **multa verba facere** = to speak at length, 1107; **grātiā facere** = forgive, 1110; **bellum facere** = wage war, 1181; **iter facere** = march, 1265.

**factiō, -ōnis**, f. [**faciō**], party, 602, 1073; combination, 636; partisan-ship, 1234.

**factiōsus, -a, -um**, adj. [**faciō**], discontented, 329; seditious, 1050, 1235.

**factum, -ī**, n. [**faciō**], action, 15, 461, 805, 1049; deed, 45, 49, 153, 983; **bene facta** = good deeds, 158; **utī factō opus esse** = as circumstances demand, 833; **quid factō opus esset** = what must be done, 848.

**fācundia, -ae**, f. [cf. **for** = *speak*], eloquence, 1208.

**faenerātor, -ōris**, m., *usurer*, 611.

**fallācia, -ae**, f. [**fallō**], deceit, 197.

**fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum**, *deceive*; **mē animus fallit**, I am mistaken, 409.

**falsō**, adv. [**fallō**], falsely, 922.

**falsus, -a, -um**, adj. [**fallō**], false, 53; dishonest, 185, 906; groundless, 655; unfounded, 909.

**fāma, -ae**, f. [**for** = *speak*], good report, 41; bad reputation, 61; report, 141, 267; tradition, 151; reputation, 284, 1001; good name, 612, 982, 1179.

**famēs, -is**, f., *hunger*, 239.

**familia, -ae**, f., *family*; school, 562; family, 584; household, 944; **matrēs familiārum** = matrons, 990.

**familiāris, -e**, adj. [**familia**], private, 241; intimate, 255; on intimate terms, 422; **rēs familiāris** = means, 90, 393; **lar familiāris** = home, 395; **filius familiārum** = son subject to parents, 800.

**familiāritās, -ātis**, f. [**familia**], intimacy, 258.

**fānum, -ī**, n. [cf. **for**], temple, 991.

**fās**, indecl. n. [cf. **for**], divine law, 270.

**fascis, -is**, m., *bundle*; the fasces, 334.

**fateor, -ērī, fassus sum** [cf. **for**], testify, 869.

**fatigō (ī)**, *weary*; demoralize, 215; weary, 511.

**fātum, -ī**, n. [**for**], prophecy, 873.

**faucēs, -ium**, f. pl., *jaws*; abl., with open jaws, 1187.

**faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum**, be well disposed, 314, 884.

**ferē**, adv., about, 778, 1383.

**ferentārius, -ī**, m., skirmisher, 1364.

**feriō, -īre, strike**; smite, 139; slay, 1371.

**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**, *bear*; go (pass.), 28; draw, 55; report, 151; carry with, 418; extol, 1199.

- ferōcia**, -ae, f. [**ferōx**], fierceness, 1388.
- ferōciter**, adv. [**ferōx**], disagreeably, 451.
- ferōx**, adj., *ferce*; impetuous, 209; headstrong, 711, 808; bold, 1142.
- ferrum**, -ī, n., (iron) [cf. **firmus**], sword, 450.
- ferus**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **ferōx**], wild, 175.
- festīnō** (1), *hasten*; hurry, 113; be on the move, 510; hurry to and fro, 568.
- fictus**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **figō**], fictitious, 53.
- fidēlis**, -e, adj. [**fides**], loyal, 165.
- fidēs**, -ei, f. [**fidō**], faithfulness, 182; honor, 283; loyalty, 363, 643; trust, 387; security, 464; protection, 659; **fidem prōdere** = break one's word, 482; **datā atque acceptā fidē** = exchange pledges, 818; **fidēs pūblica** = state's guarantee of impunity, 863, 894.
- fidūcia**, -ae, f. [**fidō**], confidence, 644.
- fidus**, -a, -um, adj. [**fidō**], loyal, 206, 367, 435; faithful, 263; tried, 353.
- filia**, -ae, f., *suckling*; daughter, 653.
- filius**, -ī, m., *suckling*; son, **filius familiārum** = son subject to parents, 800.
- figō**, -ere, **finxī**, **fictum**, *make up*, 4; invent, 437, 863.
- finis**, -is, m., *border*; limit, 1062.
- finitumus**, -a, -um, adj. [**finis**], adjoining, 111.
- fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum** [cf. **faciō**], become, 44, 98, 185, 714; be done, 434, 948; be held, 550; be perpetrated, 992; come to pass, 1057, 1155; be made, 1156.
- firmus**, -a, -um, adj., *fixed*; true, 371; strong, 1112.
- flāgitiosus**, -a, -um, adj. [**flāgitium**], disgraceful, 98.
- flāgitium**, -ī, n., *a roasting*; profigate, 246; disgraceful act, 250; disgrace, 254, 442, 692.
- flagrō** (1), *glow*; be inflamed, 260.
- flōrēns**, -entis, adj., *blooming*; prosperous, 726.
- fluxus**, -a, -um, adj., *flowing*; fleeting, 10; unstable, 259.
- focus**, -ī, m., *fireplace*; fireside, 1095; hearth, 1357.
- foedus**, -a, -um, adj., *ugly*; shameful, 204; repulsive, 279; detestable, 346; disgraceful, 502; foul, 1128; horrible, 1193; loathsome, 1248; disgusting, 1322.
- fore** = **futūrum esse**, see **sum**.
- forem** = **futūrum essem**, or **essem**, see **sum**.
- forīs**, adv., *out-of-doors*; away from home, 399; abroad, 1148.
- fōrma**, -ae, f., *shape*; beauty, 9, 271; looks, 476.
- formīdō**, -inis, f. [cf. **feriō**], ground of fear, 380.
- formīdulōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [**formīdō**], object of dread, 130, 137; causing alarm, 349; frightful, 1128.
- fornix**, -icis, m., arch, 1247.
- forte**, adv., *by chance*; **nisi forte** = unless perchance, 408.
- fortis**, -ē, adj. [cf. **firmus**, **forma**], brave, 229; courageous, 1011; strong, 1309; noble, 1360.
- fortitūdō**, -inis, f. [**fortis**], bravery, 1119; courage, 1176.
- fortūna**, -ae, f. [**foris**], fortune, 31, 147; property, 283; possessions,

612, 739; fate, 637; good fortune, 772; prosperity, 1001, 1003; resources, 1122.

**fortūnātus**, -a, -um, adj. [**fors**], fortunate, 476.

**forum**, -ī, n., market place, market, the Forum, 761.

**fragilis**, -e, adj. [**frangō**], slight, 10. **frangō**, -ere, **frēgī**, **frāctum**, break; **laqueō gulam frangere** = strangle, 1250.

**fraus**, **fraudis**, f., *deceit*; punishment, 666.

**frequēns**, -entis, adj., *in crowds*; in large numbers, 341; in full session, 908.

**frequentia**, -ae, f. [**frequēns**]: **magnā frequentiā** = full attendance, 858.

**frequentō** (1), [**frequēns**], frequent, 265.

**frētus**, -a, -um, adj., *supported by*; trusting to, 1270.

**frīgus**, -oris, n., *cold*, 240.

**frōns**, **frontis**, f., *brow*; front, in the van, 1344, 1354.

**fructus**, -ūs, m. [**fruor**], reward, 649.

**frumentum**, -ī, n. [**fruor**], grain, 1307.

**fruor**, -ī, **fructus sum**, *use*; enjoy, 8, 40.

**frūstrā**, adv. [cf. **fraus**], without avail, 365; to no purpose, 526; in vain, 633, 1098.

**fuga**, -ae, f., *flight*, 881.

**fugitivus**, -a, -um, adj. [**fuga**], runaway, 1271.

**fundō**, -ere, **fūdī**, **fūsum**, *pour*; rout, 144, 1378.

**fūr**, **fūris**, m. [cf. **ferō**], robber, 1122.

**furibundus**, -a, -um, adj. [**furor**], raving mad, 591.

**furor**, -ōris, m., *rage*; madness, 462.

**futūrus**, see **sum**.

## G

**gānea**, -ae, f., *eating house*; gluttony, 236.

**gāneō**, -ōnis, m. [**gānea**], glutton, 248.

**gaudium**, -ī, n., *gladness*; joy, 886; enjoyment, 1024; gayety, 1399.

**gēns**, **gentis**, f., *kind*; people, 746; nation, 1034; tribe, 1158; family, 1251.

**genus**, -eris, n. [**gēns**], ancestry, 77; race, 103, 1379; caste, 104; kind, 467; family, 475; description, 741; class, 765; birth, 1221.

**gerō**, -ere, **gessī**, **gestum**, *bear, carry*; take place, 605; occur, 864; fight, 1366; **rēs gestae** = history, 48; deeds, 149; **bellum gerere** = wage war, 295, 541, 569.

**gladiātōrius**, -a, -um, adj. [**gladius**], of gladiators, 562.

**gladius**, -ī, m., *sword*, 937.

**glōria**, -ae, f., *glory*; reward, 7, 10; renown, 23, 51, 195; distinction, 47, 131, 138, 142, 216; glory, 1297.

**glōrior** (1), [**glōria**], boast, 449.

**grandis**, -e, adj., *great*; heavy, 249, 470; large, 929.

**grātia**, -ae, f. [**grātus**], influence, 381; promise of favor, 920; partiality, 1013; popularity, 1155; **grātiā** following the genitive = on account of, 443, 832; for the sake of, 1396; **grātiā facere** = forgive, 1110.

**grātuitō**, adv. [**grātus**], for nothing, 289.

**grātus**, -a, -um, adj., *desirable*; pleasing, 80, 448, 644.

**gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy*; grievous, 792; bitter, 922; severe, 1028, 1029; heavy, 1046.

**graviter**, adv. [**gravis**], seriously, 997, 1394.

**gregārius**, -a, -um, adj. [**grex**], common, 694, 1346.

**grex**, **gregis**, m., *herd*; **grege factō** = in a body, 945.

**gula**, -ae, f., throat; **laqueō gulam frangere** = strangle, 1250.

## H

**habeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *have*; consider, 11, 154, 184, 188, 284; make, 23, 1090, 1145; regulate, 27; spend, 64; rule, 101; happen, 110; have and call, 118; take, 135; keep, 186, 247, 453, 878; have, 198; produce, 202; exercise, 204, 543; treat, 208; regard, 218, 998; possess, 234; deliver, 362, 431, 580, 1292; hold, 460, 668, 870; post, 564; enjoy, 569; convene, 791; form, 862; inhabit, 1128; **quicquam pēnsī habēre** = attach any weight, 89; care a straw for, 446; **in prōmptū habēre** = display, 128; **nihil pēnsī habēre** = exercise no care, 222; **in prōpatulō habēre** = offer publicly for sale, 237; **parum honestē pudicitiam habēre** = have small respect for chastity, 265; **compertum habēre** = know, 536, 1293; **reliquī habēre** = have left, 400; **cūrae habēre** = be mindful of, 429; **in spē habēre**

= expect, 585; **facile habērī** = be an easy life, 688; **in incertō habēre** = be uncertain, 768; **manufestōs habēre** = catch in the act, 777; **vītam habēre** = spend life, 1000; **rēs habet** = the fact is, 1021; **advorsōs habēre** = make enemies, 1109; **sē habēre** = be, 1121; **prō certō habēre** = be sure, 1138; **prō mūrō habēre** = be as a wall, 1328.

**haruspex**, -icis, m., *inspector of entrails*; soothsayer, 875.

**haud**, adv., *not*, 44, 243; **haud difficulter** = easily, 259; **haud sānē aliō** = very similar, 704; **haud sānē quisquam** = hardly any one at all, 1216.

**haud-quāquam**, adv., *by no means*, 46.

**haveō**, -ēre, —, —, impv., *farewell*, 660.

**hebescō**, -ere, —, —, *grow blunt*; decline, 217.

**hīc**, **haec**, **hōc**, gen. **huius**, dem. pron. (with dem. suffix, -ce), *this*; this fellow, 86; this, 165; following, 168; the latter, 196; **ad hōc** = in addition to, 309, 424; besides, 495; **hōc modō** = in the following manner, 795.

**hīc**, adv., in such a case, 1116.

**homō**, -inis, m., *human being*; man, 1, 19; person, 568; **homō novos** = upstart, 458; **homō militāris** = experienced soldier, 833, 1358.

**honestē**, adv. [**honōs**], *honorably*, 234; **parum honestē habēre** = have small respect for, 265.

**honestō** (1), [**honōs**], *crown*, 654.

**honestus**, -a, -um, adj. [**honōs**], *honorable*, 142, 555.

**honōs** (**honor**), **-ōris**, m., *honor*; office, 60; honor, 195, 381.

**hortor** (1), *urge*; encourage, 94, 1356; urge, 300; move, 312; urge on, 406; appeal to, 1298; cheer, 1331.

**hospes**, **-itis**, m., *host*; friend, 1397.

**hostilis**, **-e**, adj. [**hostis**], of the enemy, 1396.

**hostis**, **-is**, m. and f., *stranger*; enemy, 114, 144; foe, 1068.

**hūc**, adv., *hither*; to this, 205.

**hūmānus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [cf. **homō**], human, 27, 126, 221.

**humus**, **-ī**, f., *earth*; loc., **humī**, underground, 1246.

## I

**iam**, adv., *now*, 132; already, 372, 537; **iam primum** = now in the first place, 268; **iam tum** = now by that time, 337; by this time, 348; **iam pridem** = long ago, 1117.

**iānua**, **-ae**, f., *entry*; outer door, 526; door, 799.

**ibi**, adv., *there*, 55, 151; in these, 80.

**īdem**, **eadem**, **idem**, gen. **eiusdem**, dem. pron. [**i + dem**], the same, 61, 370.

**idōneus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *fit*; serviceable, 740; fit, 1039; suitable, 1068.

**igitur**, conj., *therefore*, 17, 62; accordingly, 160, 180.

**ignārus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [**in + (g)nārus**], unaware, 317; ignorant, 1038.

**ignāvia**, **-ae**, f. [**ignāvus**], apathy, 514, 804, 1301; indifference, 1172.

**ignāvus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [**in + (g)nāvus**], bad, 195; cowardly, 228; listless, 1294.

**ignōbilis**, **-e**, adj. [**in + (g)nōbilis**], of low birth, 379.

**ignōminia**, **-ae**, f. [**in + (g)nōmen**], disgrace, 427.

**ignōscō**, **-ere**, **ignōvī**, **ignōtum** [**in + (g)nōscō**], pardon, 173, 1180, 1226.

**ille**, **illa**, **illud**, gen. **illius**, dem. pron., *that*; the former, 196, 720.

**il-lecebra**, **-ae**, f. [**in + laciō**], allurement, 257.

**il-liciō**, **-ere**, **-lēxī**, **-lectum** [**in + laciō**], allure, 281.

**imbēcillus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *weakling*; unsophisticated, 58.

**imbuō**, **-ere**, **-buī**, **-būtum**, *dip*; taint, 199; impregnate, 242.

**imitor** (1), *follow up*, 1071; copy, 1065.

**im-minuō**, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtum** [**in + minuō**], curtail, 704; impair, 724.

**im-mittō**, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum** [**in + mittō**], instigate, 914.

**immō**, adv., *nay*; **immō vērō maxumē** = nay rather, very much, 1166.

**im-moderātus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [**in + moderātus**], excessive, 85; outrageous, 888; unrestrained, 1176.

**im-mortālis**, **-e**, adj. [**in + mortālis**], eternal, 1024.

**im-mūtō** (1), [**in + mūtō**], change, 32, 124, 565; transform, 97, 190.

**im-parātus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [**in + parō**], off guard, 301; unprepared, 523.

**im-pediō** (4), [**in + pēs**], prevent, 553.

**im-pellō**, **-ere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsum** [**in +**

- pellō**], induce, 744; induce to enter, 813; prevail upon, 920; move, 936.
- im-pendeō, -ēre, —, —** [**in + pen-deō**], threaten, 524, 1317.
- imperātor, -ōris, m.** [**imperō**], commander, 25; ruler, 124; leader, 406; general, 553, 1214.
- imperium, -ī, n.** [**imperō**], guidance, 5; supreme power, 17, 621, 1005; power, 23, 29, 32, 176; government, 103, 118, 122, 124, 172, 190, 1148; rule, 351; command, 355; military authority, 542; authority, 663, 1002; dominion, 734; empire, 1114; rank, 1252; **contrā imperium** = against orders, 169, 1174.
- imperō (1), [in + parō]**, command, 285; rule, 409.
- impetus, -ūs, m.** [**in + petō**], attack, 1155.
- im-pius, -a, -um, adj.** [**in + pius**], wicked, 1009.
- im-plōrō (1), [in + plōrō]**, appeal to, 1098, 1172.
- im-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum** [**in + pōnō**], put upon, 627; place, 793; fasten upon, 918; set over, 1041.
- im-prōvisus, -a, -um, adj.** [**in + prō + videō**]: **de imprōvisō** = unexpectedly, 523.
- im-pudīcus, -a, -um, adj.** [**in + pudor**], profligate, 248.
- im-pūnitās, -ātis, f.** [**in + pūniō**], freedom from punishment, 560, 849.
- im-pūnītus, -a, -um, adj.** [**in + pūniō**], unpunished, 974.
- im-pūrus, -a, -um, adj.** [**in + pūrus**], guilty, 276.
- īmus**, see **īferus**.
- in, prep., (1)** with the acc., **in**; within, 104; into, 123; toward, 165; on, 168; against, 169, 205, 1033, 1096; after, 223, 376; for, 936; in regard to, 1036; **in diēs** = day by day, 89, 463; every day, 373; **in praesēns** = for the time being, 285; **in ūnum** = to one place, 303; **in rem esse** = be to advantage, 360.
- (2)** with the abl., upon, 4; on, 17, 185; in, 21; in time of, 166, 168, 171; at, 314; among, 323, 474, 736; within, 388; before, 403; in case of, 538, 847, 1060; according to, 644; in midst of, 1168; **in prīmīs** = especially, 47, 73, 275, 455; **in mediō** = undecided, 356.
- (3)** as a vb. prefix. It indicates existence in a place with a verb of rest; motion, direction, or inclination with a verb of motion. The meaning of a noun, adjective, or participle is often negated by a prefix **in**.
- in-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**, take possession, 132, 236; fall upon, 571; advance, 1363.
- in-cendium, -ī, n.** [**incendō**], fire, 508, 592, 802, 888; destruction by fire, 596; conflagration, 603, 992; burning, 1193; **parāta incendia** = preparations for arson, 896.
- in-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum** [**in + candeō = inflame**], fire, 242; burn, 472, 873, 925; inflame, 713; ruin, 1158.
- in-ceptum, -ī, n.** [**in + capiō**], starting point, 67; subject, 146; plan, 314, 683; beginning, 390; undertaking, 1268.

- in-certus**, -a, -um, adj., unsettled, 101; visionary, 771; **in incertō habēre** = be uncertain, 768; **in-certum**, -ī, n., uncertainty, 315, 366.
- in-cessus**, -ūs, m. [**incēdō**], step, 279.
- in-cidō**, -ere, -cidī, — [**in + cadō**], fall into, 256.
- in-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**in + capiō**], begin, 14; undertake, 369, 974.
- in-citō** (1), urge on, 92.
- in-cōnsultē**, adv., unadvisedly, 780.
- in-crēdibilis**, -e, adj., impracticable, 85; incredible, 105; astounding, 130.
- in-crepō**, -āre, -uī, -itum, assail, 424; upbraid, 1199.
- in-cruentus**, -a, -um, adj., bloodless, 1392.
- in-cultus**, -a, -um, adj., unrefined, 36; neglected, 1128.
- in-cultus**, -ūs, m, neglect, 1247.
- in-currō**, -ere, -currī and -cucurrī, -cursum, dash into, 1380.
- inde**, adv., *thence*; then, 433.
- in-demnātus**, -a, -um, adj. [**in + damnō**], uncondemned, 1043.
- in-dex**, -icis, m. and f. [**in + dicō**], informer, 906.
- in-dicium**, -ī, n. [**in + dicō**], disclosure, 854; testimony, 912, 1191; evidence, 939.
- in-dicō** (1), with **dē**, give information, 558, 893.
- ind-igēns**, -entis [**indu** (old form of **in**) + **egeō**], adj., incomplete, 15.
- in-dignus**, -a, -um, adj., unworthy, 1039.
- in-doctus**, -a, -um, adj., untaught, 35.
- in-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, in-fluence, 677; instill, 1229; lead, 1375.
- industria**, -ae, f., *activity*; diligence, 649, 1148.
- indūtia**, -ārum, f. pl., *truce*, 976.
- in-edia**, -ae, f. [**in + edō**], fasting, 81.
- in-eō**, -īre, -īvī and -īī, -itum, begin, 1310.
- in-ermus**, -a, -um, adj. [**in + arma**], unarmed, 1357.
- in-ertia**, -ae, f. [**in + ars**], idleness, 1152; inactivity, 1166.
- in-ferus**, -a, -um [comp. **inferior**, superl. **infimus** or **imus**], *low*; superlative, most degraded, 824; m. pl., the dead, 1127.
- in-fēstus**, -a, -um, adj. [**in + fendō**, cf. **dēfendō**], hostile, 276, 1173, 1365; bitter, 344; inimical, 1158; **infēstōs facere** = embitter, 994.
- in-fīdus**, -a, -um, adj., false, 971.
- infimus**, see **inferus**.
- in-fīnitus**, -a, -um, adj., unbounded, 200.
- in-firmus**, -a, -um, adj., weak, 119, 1141.
- infrā**, adv. [for **inferā**, supply **parte**], below, 642.
- in-genium**, -ī, n. [**in + gignō**], character, 7, 78, 119, 188; mind, 18, 25, 157; talent, 128, 152, 155, 964; spirit, 391; intellect, 484; ability, 985, 1220; disposition, 1059; **vāna ingenia** = faithless men, 366.
- ingēns**, -entis, adj., *vast*; great, 142; powerful, 175; heavy, 291, 468; extraordinary, 1217.
- in-genuus**, -a, -um, adj. [**in + gignō**], free born, 1390.
- in-grātus**, -a, -um, adj., irksome, 699,



- in-honestus**, -a, -um, adj., dishonest, 385, 555.
- in-imīcitia**, -ae, f. [**in** + **amīcitia**], enmity, 186; animosity, 923; hostility, 1013.
- in-imīcus**, -ī, m. [**in**-**amīcus**], enemy (personal), 345, 636, 1398.
- in-īquitās**, -ātis, f. [**in** + **aequitās**], injustice, 625.
- in-itiūm**, -ī, n. [**in** + **eō**], beginning, 202, 1051; **initiō**=in the beginning, 17, 54, 101, 122; originally, 29; at the outset, 736; **initium facere**=begin, 75, 516; **initium agundī facere**=make a beginning of operations, 423.
- in-iūria**, -ae, f. [**in** + **iūs**], injury, 172, 1017; wrong, 227; harm, 610; wrongdoing, 974.
- in-iūstus**, -a, -um, adj. [**in** + **iūs**], unjust, 351.
- in-nocēns**, -entis, adj. [**in** + **noceō**], upright, 1074; blameless, 1236.
- in-nocentia**, -ae, f. [**in** + **noceō**], blamelessness, 218.
- in-noxius**, -a, -um, adj. [**in** + **noceō**], free from harm, 726; blameless, 765.
- in-opia**, -ae, f., lack, 90, 201, 312; poverty, 330, 399; lack of means, 448; want, 616, 698.
- inquam**, *say*, 592, 755.
- in-quilīnus**, -a, -um, adj. [= \***in**-**quolīnus**; cf. **incola**], of foreign birth, 589.
- in-satiābilis**, -e, adj. [**in** + **satis**], insatiable, 200.
- in-sidia**, -ārum, f. pl. [**in** + **sedeō**], trap, 491; scheme, 499; plots, 534, 595; ambushcade, 798.
- in-sīgne**, -is, n. pl. [**in** + **sīgnum**], emblem, 663; **insignia**, of authority, 1066.
- in-solēns**, -entis, adj. [**in** + **soleō**], unaccustomed, 58.
- in-solentia**, -ae, f. [**in** + **soleō**], strange conduct, 451.
- in-solēscō**, -ere, —, — [**in** + **soleō**], grow overbearing, 126.
- in-solitus**, -a, -um, adj. [**in** + **soleō**], unusual, 136; unwonted, 571.
- in-somnia**, -ae, f., lack of sleep, 511.
- in-sōns**, -sontis, adj., innocent, 286.
- in-stituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [**in** + **statuō**], order, 585; form, 1257.
- in-stitūtum**, -ī, n., habits, 95; institutions, 1065.
- in-stō**, -āre, -stitī, -stātum, approach, 1240; attack, 1367.
- in-strūmentum**, -ī, n. [**in** + **struō**], accompaniment, 478.
- in-struō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, equip, 1262; be in battle array, 1339; arrange, 1342.
- in-suēscō**, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed, 209.
- in-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, be written, 280; be in, 304, 444, 487; be attacked, 764; be intimate, 1296.
- in-super**, adv., overhead, 1247.
- in-teger**, -gra, -grum, adj., fresh, 1370.
- in-tegritās**, -ātis, f., blamelessness, 1223.
- in-tellegō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum [**inter** + **legō**], perceive, 524; realize, 596; know, 845.
- in-tempestus**, -a, -um, adj.: **nocte intempestā**, at dead of night, 512, 599.

**in-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum**, direct, 964.

**in-tentus, -a, -um**, adj., bent upon, 40, 66; eager, 113; on the alert, 296; alert, 509; given over to, 1230.

**inter**, prep. with acc., *amid*; among, 12, 138; in the midst of, 58; amid, 803; **divorsa inter sē** = opposite to one another, 93; **inter sē** = to each other, 435.

**inter-dum**, adv., at times, 189, 450.

**inter-eā**, adv., meanwhile, 1268.

**inter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum**, perish, 176.

**inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** [**inter** + **faciō**], murder, 801, 1045; slay, 1375.

**inter-rogō** (1), try, 325; question, 576, 861.

**intestīnus, -a, -um**, adj., *internal*; civil, 79.

**in-tolerandus, -a, -um**, adj., unendurable, 191; unbearable, 1322.

**intrā**, prep. with acc., *within*, 327, 1161.

**intrō**, adv., (in cpds.) *within*.

**intrō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**, lead in, 858.

**intro-eō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum**, gain entrance to, 522.

**in-ultus, -a, -um**, adj., unavenged, 1334.

**in-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum**, take control, 31; take possession of, 87, 220, 680; attack, 190; overshadow, 567.

**in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum**, *come upon*; find, 1253.

**in-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum**, envy, 685, 1069; be jealous of, 1334.

**invidia, -ae, f.** [**invideō**], jealousy, 50, 61, 110, 459; unpopularity, 438; odium, 792; hard feeling, 933.

**invisus, -a, -um**, adj. [cf. **invideō**], odious, 318; hateful, 1043.

**invītus, -a, -um**, adj., *unwilling*, 346.

**iocus, -ī, m.**, *joke*; **iocum movēre** = crack a joke, 485.

**ipse, -a, -um**, gen., **ipsīus**, intens. pron., *self*, 8, 94; one another, 138; very, 408, 1284.

**īra, -ae, f.**, *anger*, 579; passion, 961; wrath, 982.

**īrācundia, -ae, f.** [**īra**], passion, 1000; irascibility, 1005.

**īrāscor, -ī, īrātus sum** [**īra**], fly into a passion, 1004.

**īrātus, -a, -um**, adj. [**īra**], angry, 1172.

**ir-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum** [**in** + **rumpō**], force a way, 945.

**is, ea, id**, gen., **eius**, dem. pron., *this one*; some, 29; such, 140, 155, 213, 584; *this*, 349; **id** = *that*, 17; the fact, 266; **is, ea, id, dēmum** = *that and that only*, 230, 370; **id adeō** = *and just this*, 683; *this particular*, 707; **ea rēs** = *it*, 760.

**iste, ista, istud**, gen., **istīus**, dem. pron., *that of yours*, 756.

**ita**, adv., *in this manner*; thus, 15, 106, 153, 264; so, 277; accordingly, 351; *in this way*, 828; such, 1144; **ita ut** = *as much as*, 26; **nōn ita est** = *far from it*, 996.

**ita-que**, conj., and so, 381, 749, 878.

**item**, adv., also, 316, 515, 851; *in like manner*, 322; again, 561; *in the same way*, 785; further, 980; *likewise*, 1027.

**iter, itineris**, n. [cf. **eō**], journey, 861, 1264; way, 941; route, 1127, 1283; **iter facere** = march, 350; **ex itinere** = on the way, 634, 737; **magnis itineribus** = by forced marches, 1277.

**iterum**, adv., the second time, 1181.

**iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum**, order, 737.

**iūdicium, -ī**, n. [**iūdex** = **iūs** + **dīcō**], court, 251, 1098; prosecution, 252; judicial investigation, 383, 727; judicial authority, 543; trial, 923.

**iūdicō** (1), [**iūdex**], declare, 665, 949.

**iugulō** (1), assassinate, 287; execute, 1048, 1056.

**iungō, ere, iūnxī, iunctus**, join; support, 1247.

**iūrgium, -ī**, n., quarrel, 162, 578.

**iūrō** (1), [**iūs**], swear; cf. **iūs iurandum**.

**iūs, iūris**, n., right; justice, 161; human law, 270; jurisdiction, 376; right, 544, 703, 718; **iūre** = justly, 978.

**iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī**, n., oath, 812; **ad iūs iurandum adigere** = bind by an oath, 431.

**iussū** [**iussus, -ūs**], m. [**iubeō**], command, 544.

**iūstitia, -ae, f.** [**iūs**], uprightness, 174.

**iūstus, -a, -um**, adj. [**iūs**], fair, 1148.

**iuventūs, -ūtis, f.** [**iuvenis** = young], youth, 80; the youth, 132, 219, 241, 264.

**iūxtā**, adv. [cf. **iungō**], alike, 38, 1044, 1391; **iūxtā ac** = as little as, 702; **iūxtā mēcum** = just as well as I, 1304.

## L

**labōrō** (1), [**labōs**], toil, 1229; be in straits, 1370.

**labōs (-or), -ōris, m.**, an undertaking; hard work, 30; service, 133; toil, 136, 511, 649; industry, 174; hardship, 178.

**lacerō** (1), *tear*; squander, 249.

**laccessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum**, *excite*; become entangled in, 578.

**laetitia, -ae, f.** [**laetus**], gayety, 566; rejoicing, 844, 1046; gladness, 886; delight, 1055; joy, 1399.

**laetor** (1), [**laetus**], rejoice, 845, 1043.

**laetus, -a, -um**, adj., *cheerful*; joyous, 1392.

**laeva, -ae** (supply **manus**), f., *left*; 1245.

**lancea, -ae, f.**, *lance*, 1263.

**langueō, -ēre, —, —**, *be loose*; be listless, 807; relax, 1141.

**lapideus, -a, -um**, adj., *stony*; of stone, 1247.

**laqueus, -ī, m.**, *noose*; **laqueō gulam frangere** = strangle, 1250.

**lār, laris, m.**, *hearth*; **lār familiāris** = home, 395.

**largē**, adv., *lavishly*; liberally, 292.

**largior** (4), [**largus**], be lavish, 448; be lavish with, 1119; make free with, 1123; bribe, 1226; **largiundō** = bribes, 713.

**largitiō, -ōnis, f.** [**largus**], prodigality, 56; corruption, 698.

**lascīvia, -ae, f.**, *desire*; frivolity, 566.

**lassitūdō, -inis, f.** [cf. **langueō**], fatigue, 240.

**latrō, -ōnis, m.**, *robber*, 530, 1356.

**latus, -eris, n.**, *side*; flank, 1376.

**laudō** (1), [**laus**], praise, 46, 158; extol, 1151; applaud, 1198.

**laus, laudis**, f., *praise*, 141.

**lēctus**, -a, -um, adj. [**legō**], picked, 944; chosen, 1345.

**lēgātus**, -ī, m. [**lēgō**], ambassador, 606; lieutenant, 786, 1352.

**legiō**, -ōnis, f. [**legō**], army, 1206.

**lēgitumus**, -a, -um, adj. [**lēx**], regulated by law, 118, 328.

**legō**, -ere, **lēgī**, **lēctum**, *pick*; read, 1202.

**lēniō** (4), *soften*; reduce, 438; conciliate, 905.

**lepōs**, -ōris, m., *charm*, 487.

**levis**, -e, adj., *little*; mild, 1030.

**lēx**, **lēgis**, f., *binding*; law, 103, 162.

**liber**, -era, -erum, adj., *free*, 70, 103, 1149; **liber**, -erī = free man, 560; **in liberis custodiis** = under individual guardians, 878.

**liber**, **librī**, m., *bark*; book, 871.

**liberalis**, -e, adj. [**liber**], generous, 142; munificent, 1121.

**liberalitās**, -ātis, f. [**liber**], generosity, 653, 928, 1119.

**liberaliter**, adv. [**liber**], generally, 207.

**liberī**, -ōrum, m. plu. [**liber**], children, 476, 573.

**liberō** (1), [**liber**], free, 760.

**libertās**, -ātis, f. [**liber**], freedom, 114, 122, 131, 375; liberty, 623; political liberty, 704.

**libertus**, -ī, m. [**liber**], freedman, 940, 1348.

**licentia**, -ae, f. [**licet**], lack of control, 126; power, 227; freedom, 999, 1004.

**licet**, -ēre, **licuit** and **licitum est**, impers., *it is allowed*; can, 45; be

permitted, 234; it is allowed, 613; have opportunity, 1320.

**lingua**, -ae, f., *tongue*, 105, 186, 253.

**littera**, -ae, f. plu. [cf. **linō** = *be-smear*], literature, 477; letter, 545, 635, 859.

**locō** (1), [**locus**], post, 1355.

**locuplēs**, -ētis, adj. [**locus-plēnus**], rich, 417.

**locus**, -ī, m. (plu., **locī**, **loca**), *place*, 136, 143, 1341; post, 171; quarters, 208; family, 442; section, 797; room, 1024, 1185; **ad id locī** = to that very place, 835; **quō locō rēs sint** = what the situation is, 1304; **locus aequos** = plain, 1339.

**longe**, adv. [**longus**], far, 146, 640, 1091, 1387.

**longus**, -a, -um, adj., *long*, 9.

**loquor**, -ī, **locūtus sum**, *talk*; **verba loquī** = speak, 959; say, 1182.

**lubet**, -ēre, **lubuit** and **lubitum est**, impers., *it pleases*; be disposed, 1204.

**lubidinōsē**, adv. [**lubet**], wantonly, 1045.

**lubidō**, -inis, f. [**lubet**], longing, 22, 87; lust, 31, 235, 481; pleasure, 135; caprice, 148, 1034; indulgence, 243; dissipation, 398, 532; desire, 418; passion, 963; inclination, 968.

**lūctuosus**, -a, -um, adj. [**lūctus**], lamentable, 1336.

**lūctus**, -ūs, m. [cf. **lūgeō** = *mourn*], lamentation, 993; grief, 1021; mourning, 1399.

**lūculentus**, -a, -um, adj. [**lūx** = *light*], brilliant, 580.

**lūdibrium**, -ī, n. [cf. **lūdō** = *play*], mockery, 234; butt, 386.

**lūxuria**, -ae, f. [**lūxus**], extravagance, 93, 219, 470, 1107, 1150.

**lūxuriōsē**, adv. [**lūxus**], extravagantly, 207.

**lūxus**, -ūs, m., *excess*, 241; extravagance, 1212.

## M

**māchinor** (1), *devise*, 338; plan, 912.  
**maeror**, -ōris, m., sadness; grief, 1399.

**magis**, comp. adv. [**magnus**], rather, 5, 905; more, 13, 127, 148; the more, 69; more and more, 89; **eō magis** = all the more, 899; superl. **maximē** = most, 156; especially, 258, 313, 690.

**magistrātus**, -ūs, m., *mastery*; civil office, 417; magistrate, 540, 564, 1214; magistracy, 725.

**magnificē**, adv. [**magnificus**], sumptuously, 315; splendidly, 987.

**magnificus**, -a, -um, adj. [**magnus** + **faciō**], splendid, 150, 405, 970; extravagant, 164; fine, 1114.

**magnitūdō**, -inis, f. [**magnus**], size, 440; extent, 571; enormity, 618, 935, 984; aggrandizement, 715; vastness, 1214; greatness, 1222.

**magnus**, -a, -um, adj., *great*, 12, 42, 51, 1147; true, 141; remarkable, 152; mighty, 175; abundant, 296; critical, 367; fine, 413; golden, 805; important, 970; comp., **maior** = important, 1032; **maiōrēs** = ancestors, 95, 207, 587, 968; superl., **maximus**, -a, -um = greatest, 23; very great, 87,

138, 143; most splendid, 153; most convincing, 167; unlimited, 540; best, 627; supreme, 719; highest, 926; **maxima pars** = the majority, 801.

**male dictum**, -ī, n., abuse, 424; invective, 589.

**male factum**, ī, n., misdeed, 1110.

**maleficium**, -ī, n. [**male** + **faciō**], offense, 1097.

**malevolentia**, -ae, f. [**male** + **volō**], ill-will, 50, 218.

**mālō**, **mälle**, **māluī**, — [**magis** + **volō**], prefer, 159, 173, 316, 968.

**malum**, -ī, n. [**malus**], evil, 93, 181, 411; difficulty, 533; disorder, 700; misfortune, 1048.

**malus**, -a, -um, comp., **pēior**, superl., **peffumus**, adj., *bad*; evil, 58, 60; wicked, 67, 78, 282; mean, 288; **malī** = the wicked, 129; **male cōsulere** = take bad measures, 967; **mala rēs** = crime, 1119; **peffumus**, -a, -um (superl.) = worst, 92, 98, 340; **peffumus quisque** = all the worst men, 1042.

**mandātum**, -ī, n. [**mandō**], instruction, 606; **mandata verbis dat** = send verbal messages, 825.

**mandō** (1), [**manus** + **dō**], intrust, 456; instruct, 601.

**mānsuētūdō**, -inis, f. [**manus** + **suēscō** = *accustom to the hand*], clemency, 631; mildness, 1117; kindness, 1164, 1224.

**manufēstus**, -a, -um, adj. [**manus** + \***fendō** (cf. **dēfendō**)], caught in the act, 1195; **manufēstōs habēre** = catch in the act, 777.

**manus**, -ūs, f., *hand*; band, 144, 1206; gambling, 248; hand, 252,

- 572, 855; grasp, 365; reach, 388; manual labor, 697; company, 796; action, 808; *aequā manū* = in drawn battle, 731; *in manū esse* = be at one's command, 1060.
- mare, -is, n., sea, 177, 233, 392;**  
**terrā marīque, on land and sea, 238.**
- maritumus, -a, -um, adj. [mare],**  
 naval, 723.
- māter, -tris, f., mother; mātres**  
**familiārum = matrons, 990.**
- māteriēs, -ēī, f. [cf. māter], source,**  
 181.
- mātūrē, adv. [mātūrō], speedily, 15.**
- mātūrō (1), measure; hasten, 275,**  
 669; be in a hurry, 339; hurry forward, 602.
- maxumē, see magis.**
- maxumus, see magnus.**
- medius, -a, -um, adj., middle; center**  
 of, 1385; *in medio* = undecided, 356.
- mehercule [mē herculēs (ju-**  
**vet)], by Hercules, 1184.**
- melior, see bonus.**
- meminī, -isse, —, bear in mind, 822;**  
 recall, 1009.
- memor, -oris, adj., mindful, 293,**  
 693; mindfully, 1319.
- memorābilis, -e, adj. [memor],**  
 noteworthy, 73.
- memoria, -ae, f. [memor], remem-**  
 brance, 8, 69, recollection, 617,  
 1217; *nostrā memoriā* = in our  
 own time, 1047.
- memorō (1), [memor], tell, 51;**  
 mention, 91, 358; relate, 105, 130,  
 1127; recount, 143, 1274; call to  
 mind, 231; make mention, 495;  
**memorandī = recollections, 966.**
- mēns, mentis, f. [cf. memini],**  
*mind, 278; feeling, 681, 1091.*
- mentior (4), [mēns]: tantam rem**  
**mentīri = invent such a lie, 911.**
- mercēs, -ēdis, f. [cf. mereō], hire;**  
 wages, 413, 697; remuneration,  
 770.
- mercor (1), [cf. mereō], buy, 261.**
- meritō, adv. [mereō], appropriately,**  
 1044; deservedly, 1051.
- met, enclitic, for emphasis.**
- mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, meas-**  
*ure, 570.*
- metuō, -ere, -uī, — [metus], dread,**  
 1136.
- metus, -ūs, m., fear, 70, 112, 570;**  
 frightening, 172; apprehension,  
 1017.
- meus, -a, -um, poss. pron. adj., my,**  
 406.
- mīles, -itis, m., soldier, 213; private,**  
 406.
- militāris, -e, adj. [mīles], of war, 134,**  
 1066; *rēs militāris* = art of war,  
 13; *homō militāris* = experi-  
 enced soldier, 833, 1358.
- militia, -ae, f. [mīles], war, 133;**  
 loc. = abroad, 96, 113, 160, 1203;  
**militāria arma = weapons of a**  
 soldier, 1261.
- mīlia, -ium, n., thousand, 1260.**
- minitor (1), [minae], threaten, 937.**
- minor (1), [minae], threaten, 450.**
- minor, comp. adj., see parvus.**
- minumē, adv., see parum.**
- minumus, superl. adj., see parvus.**
- minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, lessen;**  
 abate, 201; lessen, 463.
- minus, comp. adv., see parum.**
- mīror (1), [mīrus], admire, 211;**  
 wonder, 701.

- mīrus**, -a, -um, adj., *smiling*; **neque mīrum** = and no wonder, 1153.
- misceō**, -ēre, -uī, *mixtum*, *mix*; upset, 28, 177.
- miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched*, 385, 1227; distressed, 650.
- miserābilis**, -e, adj. [**miser**], deplorable, 672.
- misereor**, -ērī, -itus sum [**miser**], take compassion, 616; have compassion on, 758; pity, 1162.
- miseria**, -ae, f. [**miser**], distress, 62, 754; trouble, 180; affliction, 1022; misfortune, 1164.
- misericordia**, -ae, f. [**miser**icors], compassion, 967, 1224; mercy, 1117; pity, 1164.
- misericors**, -cordis, adj. [**miser** + **cor**], compassionate, 1122.
- miseror** (1), [**miser**], lament for, 572; deplore, 988.
- mittō**, -ere, *mīsī*, *missum*, *send*; dispatch, 344.
- mōbilitās**, -ātis, f. [**moveō**], fickleness, 935.
- moderātus**, -a, -um, adj. [**modus**], controlled; as neut. subst., consideration, 222.
- moderor** (1), [**modus**], with dat., control, 1035; restrain, 1062.
- modestia**, -ae, f. [**modus**], self-restraint, 204; moderation, 720, 1014; sobriety, 1233.
- modestus**, -a, -um, adj. [**modus**], modest, 486; discreet, 1235.
- modo**, adv., and conj. [**modus**]; as adv., **modo . . . modo** = now . . . now, 279; at one time . . . at another time, 1265; **nōn modo** = not only, 337; **tantum modo** = only, 389; **paululum modo** = only slightly, 1141; as conj., **sī modo** = if only, 755, 1065.
- modus**, -ī, m., *measure*; means, 88; way, 125, 397; moderation, 204; fashion, 224; kind, 244, 270; method, 282; limit, 470, 721; **quōdō** = how, 96, 1302; **quōnam modō** = how pray, 627; **hōc modō** = in the following manner, 795; **huiusce modī** = to this effect, 959, 1090.
- moenia**, -ium, n. plu. (no sing.) [cf. **munus**, **mūrus**], walled in, 104; city walls, 1161.
- mōlior** (4), *set in motion*, 507.
- molliō** (4), [**mollis**], soften, 209.
- mollis**, -e, adj., *soft*; tender, 259; agreeable, 486.
- molliter**, adv. [**mollis**], luxuriously, 315.
- mollitia**, -ae, f. [**mollis**], irresolution, 1166.
- moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum [cf. **mēns**, **meminī**], demand, 947; warn, 1095; give advice, 1299.
- mōns**, **montis**, m., *mountain*, 392.
- mora**, -ae, f., *delay*, 749.
- morbus**, -ī, m. [cf. **morior**], disease, 679.
- mors**, **mortis**, f. [cf. **morior**], *death*, 38, 1012.
- mortālis**, -e, adj.: [**mors**], human, 109; **mortālis**, -is, m., man, 12, 35, 185, 390.
- mōs**, **mōris**, m., *custom*; habits, 32; practice, 60, 1071; character, 75, 331, 701, 1113; morals, 92, 94, 160, 215; way, 105; custom, 108, 207; method of government, 124; principle, 739, 1121; disposition, 1296; **virōrum mōre** = like men, 1335.

**mōtus**, -ūs, m. [**moveō**], disturbance, 779.

**moveō**, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, *set in motion*; disturb, 413; expel, 443; set in motion, 551; persist in, 575; break, 1283; **iocum movēre** = crack a joke, 485.

**muliebris**, -e, adj. [**mulier**], womanish, 237, 1170.

**mulier**, -eris, f. [cf. **mollis**], woman, 237, 447.

**multitūdō**, -inis, f. [**multus**], many men, 106; body of men, 515, 547; crowd, 666, 838; host, 794; mob, 942, 1131; number, 1073; great number, 1212, 1332.

**multō**, adv. [**multus**], by far, 1144.

**multum**, adv. [**multus**]; **plūrum** (superl.), very much, 304.

**multus**, -a, -um, adj., *much*; many, 35, 45, 184; various, 282; much, 487; **multī et variī** = many different, 1058; **plūs posse** = be more powerful, 734, 1134; **plūs valēre** = have more weight, 981; **plūrum** = most, 25; **plūrumī**, very many, 467.

**mūnicipium**, -ī, n. [**mūnia** + **capiō**], free town, 310, 562, 1083, 1129; town, 1313.

**mūnificentia**, ae, f. [**mūnia** + **faciō**], liberality, 1223.

**mūniō** (4), [**moenia**], protect, 596, 1246.

**mūnus**, -eris, n. plu., *service*; gift, 929.

**mūrus**, -ī, m. [cf. **moenia**], wall, 139,

**mūtō** (1), [**moveō**], change, 28, 686, 884; exchange, 1324.

**mūtuus**, -a, -um, adj. [**mūtō**]; **sūmptus mūtuus** = secured on a loan, 465.

## N

**nam**, conj., *for*, 9; but, 1181.

**nam-que**, conj., *and for*; *for*, 182.

**nancīscor**, -ī, **nactus** or **nanctus sum**, *obtain*, 711.

**nārrō** (1), *tell*; tell of, 159; **nar-randī** = narrative, 76.

**nāscor**, -ī, **nātus sum**, *be born*, 77, 441.

**nātiō**, -ōnis, f. [**nāscor**], race, 22; tribe, 175, 377.

**nātūra**, -ae, f. [**nāscor**], nature, 3, 42; character, 1220; natural temperament, 1296.

**nē**, adv., assuredly.

**nē** (1), adv., *not*, 1122.

(2), conj., that . . . not, 2, 973; much less, 215; from, 554; lest, 980.

**-ne**, enclitic, (1), adv., in a direct question, not translated.

(2) conj., in an indirect question = whether, 1113.

**nec**, see **neque**.

**necessārius**, -a, -um, adj. [**ne-cesse**], **necessāria**, -ōrum, n. pl., necessities of life, 393.

**necesse**, indeclin. n. adj., *necessary*; **necesse est** = is required, 478.

**necessitūdō**, -inis, f. [**necesse**], need, 303, 313; financial troubles, 422; necessity, 626, 1316.

**necō** (1), *kill*; slay, 273; execute, 1029; kill, 1043; put to death, 1175.

**ne-fandus**, -a, -um, adj. [**for** = *speak*], unspeakable, 268.

**ne-fārius**, -a, -um, adj. [**fās** = *right*], infamous, 976, 1190.

**neglegentia**, -ae, f. [**neglegō**], carelessness, 1112.



- neglegō, -ere, -lēxī** (lēgī), **-lēc-tum** [**nec** + **legō**], disregard, 184, 1032; neglect, 1230.
- negōtior** (1), [**negōtium**], be in business, 748.
- negōtiōsus, -a, -um**, adj. [**negōtium**], intent upon business, 156.
- negōtium, -ī, n.** [**nec** + **ōtium**], undertaking, 24; business, 40; emergency, 538; assignment, 794; undertaking, 813, 1205; reason, 906; matter, 1031; interests, 1230; **negōtium dare** = commission, 743.
- nēmō, —, m. and f.** [**nē** + **homō**], no one, 157; gen. **nūllius**, 544.
- neque** and **nec**, adv. and conj., nor, 65; and not, 1012; **neque . . . neque** = neither . . . nor, 27, 200, 204.
- ne-queō, -īre, -īvī**, be unable, 352; cannot, 930.
- nē-quīquam**, adv., to no purpose, 363, 1172.
- nē-ve** or **neu**, conj., and not, 626, 982; **neu . . . nēve** = that not . . . and that not, 1084.
- nī**, conj., if not, 145, 338.
- nihil**, indeclin., and **nihilum, -ī, n.** [**nē** + **hīlum** = tifle], nothing, 271, 1226; **nihilō minus** = nevertheless, 60; **nihil reliquī facere** = leave nothing, 213, 532; **nihil pēnsī habēre** = exercise no care, 222; acc. as adv. = not at all, 296, 965; **nihil fit reliquī** = nothing left, 1099.
- nīmīs**, adv., too, 207; too much, 884; **nīmīs alta** = impossible, 85.
- nisi**, conj., except, 231, 623; unless, 374.
- nītor, -ī, nīsus** or **nīxus sum**, *strive*, 2.
- nōbilis, -e**, adj. [cf. **nōscō**], well-known, 77, 310; of noble birth, 269, 329, 379; of highest rank, 1157. **nōbilis, -is**, m., man of high rank, 311; aristocrat, 314.
- nōbilitās, -ātis**, f. [**nōbilis**], distinction, 141; the nobility, 715, 801.
- nocturnus, -a, -um**, adj. [**nox**], by night, 781.
- nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —** [**nē** + **volō**], not to wish, 370; **nōli** + inf. = do not, 1143.
- nōmen, -inis**, n., *name*, 17, 1158; behest, 641; security, 651, 652; reason, 656; pretext, 717.
- nōminō** (1), [**nōmen**], call by name, 425, 1355; mention, 765, 902, 922; talk about, 1117.
- nōn**, adv., *not*, 64; **nōn ita esse** = far from it, 996.
- nōn-dum**, adv., not yet, 341.
- nōn-ne**, interrog. adv., expects affirmative answer = not ? 384.
- nōn-nūllus, -a, -um**, adj., some, 263.
- nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum**, *learn*; perf. *know*, 749.
- nōs-met**, see **egō** and **-met**.
- noster, -tra, -trum**, poss. pron. adj. [**nōs**], *our*, 4.
- nōtus, -a, -um**, adj. [**nōscō**], known, 749, 840.
- novissumē**, adv. [**novos**], quite recently, 617.
- novitās, -ātis**, f. [**novos**], strangeness, 74.
- novō** (1), [**novos**], effect a revolution, 728.
- novos, -a, -om**, adj., *new*, 983;

another, 1232: **nova**, -ōrum, n. pl., all things new, 396, 686; **tabulae novae** = cancellation of debts, 416; **homō novos** = an upstart, 458; **novae rēs** = revolution, 528, 682.

**nox, noctis**, f., *night*, 512.

**nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, veil**; marry (of the woman), 272.

**nūllus, -a, -um**, adj. [**nē + ūllus**], no, 294.

**numerus, -ī**, m., *number*; men, 605; crowd, 784; list, 1054.

**numquam**, adv. [**nē + umquam**], never, 155.

**nunc**, adv. [**num + -ce**], now, 658.

**nūntio** (1), [**nūntius**], make known, 549; inform, 658; tell, 898.

**nūntius, -ī**, m. [cf. **novos**], messenger, 843, 944; news, 1272.

**nūptiae, -ārum**, f. pl. [**nūpta = bride**], marriage, 274.

**nūsquam**, adv. [**nē + usquam = anywhere**], nowhere, 395.

## O

**Ō**, interjection, O! oh!

**ob**, prep. with **acc**, *towards*; on account of; **quam ob rem** = wherefore, 645; (in cpds.) towards, at or before, against.

**oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, forget**; **oblītus, -a, -um**, adj., forgetful, 1009.

**ob-noxius, -a, -um**, adj., submissive, 263; subject to, 380, 1150.

**oboediēns, -entis**, adj. [**ob + audiō**], with dat., subservient to, 3.

**obscūrō** (1), [**obscūrus**], hide, 148.

**obscūrus, -a, -um**, adj., *dark*; **in obscūrō** = unnoticed, 1000.

**obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum** [**ob + sedeō = sit**], watch, 799.

**ob-sīdō, -ere, —, —**, guard, 835.

**obstinātus, -a, -um**, adj. [cf. **ob + stō**], stubborn, 675.

**ob-stō, -āre, -stitī, —**, stand in the way, 1064, 1306; be at variance with, 1178.

**ob-strepo, -ere, -uī, —**, cry out against, 590.

**ob-testor** (1), entreat, 624, 840.

**obteneō, -ēre, uī, -tentum** [**ob + teneō**], take possession of, 335; obtain, 650.

**ob-viam, athwart the way**; **obviam īre** = go against, 114.

**occāsiō, -ōnis**, f. [**ob + cadō**], opportunity, 1266; **per occāsiō-nem** = opportunity, 977.

**occāsus, -ūs**, m. [**ob + cadō**], setting, 672.

**occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum** [**ob + caedo**], kill, 350.

**occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum** [**ob + cadō**], fall, 1394.

**occultē**, adv. [**occultus**], secretly, 311, 1278.

**occultō** (1), [**occultus, freq. of occultō = conceal**], conceal, 445.

**occultus, -a, -um**, adj. [**occultō = conceal**], concealed, 452.

**occupō** (1), [cf. **ob + capiō**], take possession of, 845.

**octō**, indeclin. num. adj., eight, 1343.

**oculus, -ī**, m., *eye*, 279.

**ōdī, ōdisse, hate**; despise, 686.

**odium, -ī**, n. [**ōdī**], hatred, 686, 925.

**odor, -ōris**, m., *smell*, 1248.

**offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum** [**ob + ferō**], present, 729, 1218.

**officiōs, -ere, -feci, -fectum** [ob + faciō], stand in the way of, 518; stop, 1298.

**officium, -i, n.** [opus + faciō], task, 66; duty, 1372.

**omittō, -ere, -misi, -missus** [ob + mittō], put aside, 574; pass over, 1157.

**omnino, adv.** [omnis], generally, 682.

**omnis, -e, adj., all;** whole, 4; all, 181; all sorts, 622; the whole, 774, 832; everybody, 824; entire, 1255, 1261; **omnia** = all things, 28.

**onus, -eris, n., load;** burden, 37, 180; trouble, 849.

**opera, -ae, f.** [opus], services, 520; assistance, 766; **operae pretium est** = it is worth while, 222; **dare operam** = see to it, 539, 1053; endeavor, 777.

**opifex, -icis, m. and f.** [opus + facere], workman, 941.

**optulor (i), [ops + \*tulō, cf. tuli],** relieve, 617.

**opperior, -iri, -pertus sum** [cf. peritus = experienced], wait for, 240, 1303.

**opportunitās, -ātis, f.** [opportūnus], opportunity, 805.

**opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.** [ob + portus], favorable, 297, 364, 927; suitable, 464, 508; useful, 506.

**opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum** [ob + premō], overthrow, 293; crush, 517; overtake, 732; overwhelm, 1046.

**oppugnō (i), [ob + pugnō],** attack, 923.

**ops, opis, f., power;** power, 7, 724, 1269; resources, 241, 563, 602; in-

fluence, 301, 319; support, 415; wealth, 685, 770; help, 971; capital, 1079; means, 1134; possessions, 1322; **summā ope** = with all one's might, 2, 714.

**optō (i), choose;** desire, 179, 402.

**optumus, see bonus.**

**opulentia, -ae, f.** [cf. opēs], wealth, 110; strength, 1112; abundance, 1151.

**opulentus, -a, -um, adj.** [opēs], wealthy, 1207.

**opus, -eris, n., work;** **opus est** = there is need, 15, 390, 806; want, 588.

**orātiō, -ōnis, f.** [orō], speech, 362, 430; words, 406.

**orbis, -is, m., circle;** **terrārum orbis** = the world, 152.

**orō, -inis, m., row;** rank, 305, 308; order, 858; presence, 1107, 1125; **ordine** = in proper order, 969; pl., troops, 1339.

**orior, -iri, ortus sum, rise;** arise, 110, 438; be descended from, 584; spring, 1037.

**orō (i), speak;** beg, 758, 945.

**ortus, -ūs, m.** [orior], rising, 673.

**ostendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum** [obs = ob + tendō], point out, 42, 756.

**otium, -i, n., leisure;** ease, 179, 314; inactivity, 208, 288, 699; quiet, 1103.

## P

**pactiō, -ōnis, f.** [paciscor = agree together], agreement, 496.

**pār, paris, adj., equal,** 257; alike, 1222.

**parātus, -a, -um, adj.** [parō], ready,

510, 826; determined, 1309. **parāta**, -ōrum, n. pl., preparations, 803.

**parēō**, -ere, **peperēi** or **parāi**, **parsum**, *spare*, 262, 480, 1123.

**pareus**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **parēō**], frugal, 165.

**parēns**, -entis, m. and f. [cf. **pariō**], parent, 114; father, 737; mother, 1215.

**pārēō**, -ēre, -uī, *obey*, 34; be subject to, 673; be guided by, 964.

**pariēz**, -etis, m., *wall*, 1246.

**pariō**, -ere, **peperī**, **partum**, *beget*; secure, 30; produce, 567.

**parō** (1), *make ready*; secure, 88, 1170; make preparations, 113, 332; acquire, 117; prepare, 646; get ready, 464, 541; set, 491, 798; plan for, 507, 603; get together, 515; form, 525; plan, 658; enact, 1075; bring, 1095; provide, 1242.

**parriēda**, -ae, m., murderer, 251, 1177; traitor, 590, 1033.

**parz**, **partis**, f., *part*, 361; hand, 769, 1351; wing, 1348; pl., party, 706; **parz**... **aliī** = some... others, 18; **aliī**... **parz** = some... others, 718, 903.

**particeps**, -cipis, adj. [**parz** + **capiō**], sharing in, 311, 420.

**partim**, adv. [**parz**], partly, 942.

**parum**, adv. [cf. **parvus**], too little, 84, 440; comp., **minus** = less, not, 1038; **quō minus** = the less, from; superl., **minimē** = by no means, not at all, 1082.

**parvus**, -a, -um, adj., *little*; small, 144, 1079; of little consequence, 997; **parvī pendere** = regard as of little value, 220, 1111; comp.,

**minor** = lesser, 564; incommensurate, 1007; superl., **minimus**, least of all, 161.

**patefaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum [**pateō** + **faciō**], disclose, 677; bring to light, 846, 883, 1278.

**pateō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *be open*; be thrown open, 177, 1313; be manifested, 1296.

**pater**, -tris, m., *father*; pl. fathers, 121, 966; senators, 583; patricians, 621.

**patera**, -ae, f. [**pateō**], bowl, 432.

**patiēz**, -entis, adj. [**patior**], capable of enduring, 81, 132.

**patior**, -ī, **passus sum**, *bear*; endure, 352; suffer, 990; allow, 1185; **muliebria pati** = follow practices of women, 237.

**patria**, -ae, f. [**pater**], country, 114.

**patricius**, -a, -um, adj. [**pater**], of senatorial birth, 586, 1251; **patricius**, -ī, m., nobleman, patrician.

**patrimōnium**, -ī, n. [**pater**], inheritance, 691.

**patrius**, -a, -um, adj. [**pater**], paternal, 249.

**patrō** (1), *bring to pass*; accomplish, 340; make possible, 1211; carry out, 1268.

**patrōcinium**, -ī, n. [**patrōcinor** = *be a patron*], patronage, 773; defense, 916.

**pauci**, -ōrum, m., *few*; a few, 111; the few, 725; **pauca**, -ōrum, n., a few things, 75, 1299; **paucis** (**verbis**) = briefly, 73, 95, 716.

**paucitas**, -atis, f. [**paucus**], a very few, 1212.

**paulatim**, adv. [**paulus** = *little*], gradually, 97, 189, 1044; by degrees, 1363.

**paulō**, adv. [**paulus**], a little, 311.  
**paululum**, adv. [**paulus**], a very little, 1141; a little, 1245.  
**paupertās**, -ātis, f. [**pauper** = *poor*], poverty, 217, 1211.  
**paveō**, -ēre, **pāvī**, shudder at, 573.  
**pāx**, **pācis**, f., *peace*, 26.  
**peccātum**, -ī, n. [**peccō**], mistake, 1184.  
**peccō** (1), *miss*; **peccandī** = crime, 285.  
**pectus**, -oris, n., *breast*, 185.  
**pecūnia**, -ae, f. [**pecus**], money, 142; mammon, 1155; **pecūniae repetundae** = extortion, 326, 923.  
**pecus**, -oris, n., *cattle*, 3.  
**pedes**, -itis, m. [**pēs**], on foot, 1341;  
**pedibus aeger** = afflicted with gout, 1351.  
**pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, *drive*, 171.  
**pendō**, -ere, **pependī**, **pēnsum**, *hang down*; pay, 378; **parvī pendere** = regard as of little value, 220, 1111.  
**pensum**, -ī, n. [**pendō**], scruple, 1183; **quicquam pēnsī habēre** = attach any weight, 88; care a straw for, 446; **nihil pēnsī habēre** = exercise no care, 222.  
**per**, prep. with acc, *through*; in, 15, 291; by, 125, 128, 540; through, 288; over, 1264; along, 1278. Adds intensity in compounds.  
**percellō**, -ere, -culī, -culsum [**per** + \***cellō** = *beat*], be panic-stricken, 112; be in consternation, 802.  
**per-contor** (1), inquire, 750.  
**per-dō**, -ere, **perdidī**, **perditum**, ruin, 588; destroy, 676, 1124.

**per-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, conduct, 761, 856.  
**peregrinor** (1), [**per** + **ager**], travel in strange land, 36.  
**per-eō**, īre, -iī or īvī, -itūrum, perish, 628.  
**per-fero**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry, 813.  
**per-fuga**, -ae, m., deserter, 1283.  
**per-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, escape, 1278.  
**per-fugium**, -ī, n., refuge, 1227.  
**pergō**, -ere, **perrēxī**, **perrēctum** [**per** + **regō**], proceed, 818.\*  
**perīculum**, -ī, n., *danger*; dangerous (hendiadys), 24; danger, 62, 1169; peril, 405, 644; crisis, 806; straits, 1191.  
**periūrium**, -ī, n. [**per** + **iūs**], perjury, 253.  
**per-legō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, read, 876.  
**per-misceō**, -ēre, -uī, -mixtum, mix, 432.  
**per-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, intrust, 541, 1352; empower, 557; authorize, 833; allow, 1076.  
**per-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, alarm, 533, 565; influence, 620, 954; affect, 995.  
**perniciēs**, -ēī, f. [**per** + **necō**], destruction, 338, 496.  
**per-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, prevail upon, 496.  
**perpetior**, -ī, -pessus sum [**per** + **patior**], en 'ure, 355.  
**per-scribō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, write in detail, 69.  
**per-sequor**, -ī, -secūtus sum, avenge, 173; follow up, 669; punish, 1097.

**per-solvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum**,  
pay in full, 653.

**per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, be very  
much afraid, 519.

**per-tineo, -ēre, -uī** [**per + teneō**],  
aim, 994.

**per-turbo** (1), disturb, 330.

**per-veniō, -īre, -vērī, -ventum**,  
come into the hands of, 1038;  
reach, 1272.

**pēs, pedis**, m., *foot*, 1246; **pedibus**  
**in sententiam īre** = adopt the  
opinion, 955; see note on this line.

**pessumus**, see **malus**.

**pestilentia, -ae, f.** [**pestis** = *a deadly*  
*disease*], plague, 190.

**petitiō, -ōnis, f.** [**petō**], candidacy,  
429, 499, 925.

**petō, -ere, -īvi or -ī, -ītum, fly** (*at*):  
be a candidate for, 296, 421, 489;  
stand for, 327; expect, 415; seek  
out, 482; aim at, 622; make a re-  
quest, 630; seek, 633; seek for, 1237.

**petulantia, -ae, f.** [**petō**], wan-  
tonness, 690.

**pietās, -ātis, f.** [**pīus** = *loyal, duti-*  
*ful*], piety, 226.

**pīlum, -ī, n.**, *a pounder*; heavy jave-  
lin, 1366.

**pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pīctum, tattoo,**  
*paint*; **tabula pīcta** = painting,  
211.

**placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, with dat.:  
*please*; be satisfactory, 1081; seem  
good, 1308.

**placidē, adv.** [**placeō**], gently, 728.

**plānitiēs, -ēī, f.** [**plānus** = *level*],  
level ground, 1342.

**plēbs** (**plēbēs**), **-is** (**eī**), *f.*, *full-*  
*ness, mass*; populace, 527; common  
people, 587.

**plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj.**,  
mostly, pl. [**cf. plēnus** = *full*],  
most people, 49, 54; most of, 109,  
337; very many, 291; for the most  
part, 313, 1067; the greater part of,  
456, 905; most, 1360; the majority,  
986, 1274.

**plērumque, adv.** [**cf. plērique**], for  
the most part, 537.

**plūrumum**, see **multum**.

**plūrumus**, see **multus**.

**plūs**, see **multus**.

**poena, -ae, f.** [**cf. pūniō**], punish-  
ment, 848; penalty, 983, 1018;  
**poenās dare** = be punished, 325,  
439; pay the penalty, 1046, 1176.

**pollēns, -entis, adj.** [**pote + valeō**],  
strong, 109.

**polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum** [**por +**  
**liceō** = *value*], promise, 416, 449;  
offer, 520; **bene pollicērī** = make  
fair promises, 776.

**pollicitor** (1), [*freq.* of **polliceor**],  
**pollicitandō** = promises, 713.

**polluō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum** [**por +**  
**luō** = *wash*], desecrate, 212; de-  
file, 457.

**pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, put;**  
bestow, 404.

**pōns, pontis, m.**, *bridge*, 830, 835.

**pontificātus, -ūs, m.** [**pōns + fa-**  
**ciō**], office of pontifex, 925.

**populāris, -is, m.** [**populus**], ac-  
complice, 431, 461, 1131.

**populus, -ī, m.**, *people*; nation,  
110, 175, 377, 967; people, 543;  
the populace, 1043; **populus**  
**Rōmānus** = Roman people, 68,  
144.

**por-, vb. prefix**, cognate with **prō**.

**porrō, adv.** [**cf. prae, prō**], further;

- porrō autem** = while on the other hand, 846.
- portātiō, -ōnis, f.** [**portō**], a moving from place to place, 782.
- portendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum** [cf. **por-** + **tendō**], assign by prophecy, 872.
- portentum, -ī, n.** [**portendō**], omen, 549.
- portō (1)**, *carry*; bring, 116; convey, 465; transport, 550.
- possessiō, -ōnis, f.** [cf. **possidēō**], property, 652.
- possidēō, -ēre, -sedī, -sessum** [cf. **por-** + **sedēō**], be master of, 965; keep in possession, 1153.
- possum, posse, potui, —** [**potis** + **sum**], be powerful, 25; can, 72, 125, 143; be possible, 744; **plūs posse** = be more powerful, 734, 1134.
- post, adv., behind**, afterwards, 115, 121, 189; later on, 469; **post esse** = be forgotten, 459.
- post, prep., with acc.**, after, 86, 433; since, 340.
- post-eā, adv.**, subsequently, 343;
- post-eā . . . quam** = after, 20.
- post-quam, conj.**, after, 104, 201, 375.
- postremō, adv.** [**post**], finally, 253, 270, 511, 1067; in short, 262, 450, 861; in a word, 396.
- postremus, -a, -um, adj.** [**post**], the last, 1008.
- postulō (1)**, [cf. **poscō** = *ask*], insist, 413; entreat, 583; require, 812, 1242.
- potēns, -entis, adj.** [cf. **possum**], powerful, 376, 714.
- potentia, -ae, f.** [**potēns**], influence, 217, 725, 903, 914; power, 319; supremacy, 720.
- potestās, -ātis, f.** [**possum**], power, 710; opportunity, 910.
- potior (4)**, [**potis** = *able*], take possession of, 873.
- potius, adv., comp.** [**potis**], by preference, 289.
- pōtō (1)**, *drink*; be intemperate, 210.
- prae, prep. with abl.**, *before*; (in epds.) before, with superl. force, over.
- prae-acūtus, -a, -um, adj.**, sharpened, 1263.
- praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum** [**prae** + **habeō**], furnish, 261; secure, 1103.
- praeceps, -cipitis, adj.** [**prae** + **caput**], headlong, 592; desperate, 689; **praeceps abire** = rush headlong to ruin, 484.
- praeceptum, -ī, n.** [**prae** + **capio**], instructions, 810.
- praecepiō, -ere, -ēpī, -ceptum** [**prae** + **capio**], give instructions, 738; instruct, 775, 834, 1250.
- prae-elārus, -a, -um, adj.**, most excellent, 40; great, 155; splendid, 1203.
- praeda, -ae, f.** [cf. **prehendō** = *lay hold of*], source of booty, 427; booty, 887.
- prae-dicō (1)**, assert, 917.
- prae-ditus, -a, -um, adj.** [**prae** + **dō**], endowed, 1002.
- prae-fectus, -ī, m.** [**prae** + **faciō**], prefect, 1359.
- prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, pre-**fer, 699.
- prae-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum**, send forward, 514.
- praemium, -ī, n.** [**prae** + **emō**], reward, 302, 404, 1153; recompense, 939.

**praesēns**, -entis, adj. [**prae** + **sum**], present, 764 ; in **praesēns** = for the time being, 285.

**praesentia**, -ae, f. [**praesēns**], presence, 579.

**praesertim**, adv. [**prae** + **serō**, cf. **seriēs**], particularly, 1019.

**praesideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, = [**prae** + **sedeō**], be in command, 1281.

**praesidium**, -ī, n. [**praesideō**], safeguard, 348, 625 ; guard, 834, 1303 ; garrison, 1020 ; defense, 1289.

**prae-stō**, -āre, -stitī, -stātum and -stitum, surpass, 1 ; be preëminent, 690 ; **praestat** (impers.) = it is better, 385.

**prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, =, with dat., be in command of, 564, 787.

**praeter** (1), adv. [**prae** + suffix **-ter**], beyond ; except, 667.

(2) prep. with acc., except, 227 ; besides, 271 ; in addition, 870.

**praeter-eā**, adv., besides, 92, 250 ; once again, 310 ; furthermore, 354, 746 ; also, 476 ; in addition also, 529 ; next, 697 ; again, 702 ; in addition, 765 ; as well as, 1311.

**praeter-eō**, -īre, -īī, -itum, pass over, 1219.

**praetor**, -ōris, m. [**prae** + **eō**], praetor, 344, 555.

**praetōrius**, -a, -um, adj. [**praetor**], praetorian, of a praetor ; **cohortes praetoriae** = the general's body-guard, 1385.

**prāvus**, -a, -um, adj. [**prō**], forward ; degenerate, 78.

**pretium**, -ī, n., *wager* ; pay, 943 ; **operae pretium est** = it is worth while, 223.

**prex**, **precis**, f. [cf. **precor** = *ask*], entreaty, 920.

**pridem**, adv. [cf. **prae** + demon. suffix **-dem**], **iam pridem** = long ago, 1117.

**primum**, see **prius**.

**prius**, see **prior**.

**princeps**, -cipis, adj. [**primus** + **capiō**], leader, 321 ; foremost, 466.

**principium**, -ī, n. [**princeps**], beginning, 493.

**prior**, -us, -ōris, adj., comp. [cf. **prō**], former ; **primus**, -a, -um, superl., of first importance, 674 ; front, 1369 ; in **primis** = especially, 47, 73, 455, 1077.

**pristinus**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **prī(u)s**], former, 1319.

**prius**, adv. comp. [cf. **prō**], beforehand, 517 ; first, 839, 876 ; **priusquam** = before, 14, 75, 239, 817 ; **primum** = at first, 18, 132 ; first, 48, 209 ; **iam primum** = now in the first place, 268 ; **ubi primum** = as soon as, 728 ; **prīmō** = at first, 180, 188 ; in early life, 468.

**privātim**, adj. [cf. **privus** = *separate*], from individuals, 211 ; as individuals, 745 ; in private capacity, 928 ; on the part of individuals, 1151.

**privātus**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **privus**], private, 534 ; **ex negotiis privātis** = on private business interests, 906 ; **privātus**, -ī, m., individual, 232.

**privignus**, -ī, m. [**privus** + **genus**], stepson, 272.

**privō** (1), [cf. **privus**], deprive of, 649.



- prō**, prep. with abl., *before*; in the place of, 30, 56, 183; if not, 53; as, 153, 218; for, 252; to, 315; before, 339; with power of, 343; instead of, 366, 1150; in proportion to, 440, 563, 983, 1257; in keeping with, 557; in consideration of, 656; in behalf of, 1317, 1318; according to, 1341; **prō certo** = certainly, 273; **prō vērō** = as the truth, 1060; **prō mūrō habēre** = be as a wall, 1328; (in cpds., often **prō**), before, intensive force, negative force, forth.
- prō**, interj., with acc., by, 387.
- probitās**, -ātis, f. [**probus**], honesty, 182.
- probō** (1), [**probus**], approve of, 683.
- probrum**, -ī, n., *reproach*; disgrace, 218; disgraceful conduct, 443; shameful life, 690.
- probus**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **prō + fui**], virtuous, 478; good, 1065.
- procāx**, -ācis, adj. [cf. **prex**], pert, 486.
- prō-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, succeed, 13, 595; make progress, 512; come forth, 1396.
- procul**, adv. [cf. **prō**], *far*, 63, 347, 1285.
- prōdīgium**, -ī, n., *portent*; miracle, 549; omen, 874.
- prō-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, disclose, 495; **fidem prōdere** = break word, 483.
- proelium**, -ī, n., *battle*, 170; engagement, 730; **proelium committere** = join battle, 1365.
- pro-fānus**, -a, -um, adj., profane, 212.
- pro-fectō** [**pro + factum**], adv. *surely*, 37, 147, 1078; undoubtedly, 731.
- proficiāscor**, -ī, **profectus sum** [**pro + faciō**], set forth, 517, 892; set out, 599, 630; join, 736; start, 852.
- profiteor**, -ērī, -fessus sum [**pro + fateor**], announce as candidate, 328.
- pro-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, —, flee, 854.
- pro-fugus**, -a, -um, adj., fugitive, 101.
- pro-fundō**, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, squander, 392.
- pro-fūsē**, adv., excessively, 243.
- pro-fūsus**, -a, -um, adj., prodigal, 83.
- pro-hibeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum [**pro + habeō**], forbid, 327, 1307; keep away from, 526.
- pro-inde**, adv., **proinde quasi** = just as if, 230.
- prō-lātō** (1), [freq. of **prōferō**], postpone, 805.
- prō-miscuus**, -a, -um, adj. [**prō + misceō**], cheap, 222.
- prōmptus**, -a, -um, adj. [**prō + emō**], ready, 186, 601; quick, 808. (**prōmptus**, -ūs), m. [**prō + emō**], display, 128.
- prōnus**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **prō**], with face to the ground, 3.
- (**prōpatulum**, -ī, n.) [**prō + pateō** = *be open*], **in prōpatulō habēre**, offer publicly for sale, 237.
- prope**, (comp, **propius**) [**pro + demon. -pe**], near, 194; almost, 1221.
- prope**, prep. with acc., **prope diem** = at a near day, 603, 1267.

**prō-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,**  
ward off, 115.

**properē, adv.** [**properus** = *forward-making*], hastily, 524; speedily, 843; hurriedly, 1283.

**properō (ī), [properus],** be quick, 140; hasten, 235, 899, 1189.

**propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope],**  
near, 761.

**propior, -ius, gen., -ōris, adj.,**  
comp. [**prope**], nearer; **proximus, -a, -um** (superl.), nearest, 255; next, 488; following, 793.

**propius, see prope.**

**prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,**  
set forth, 414; offer, 647.

**propter, prep. [prope],** on account of, 617.

**prōripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum [prō + rapiō],** with **sē**, rush out, 594.

**prōrsus [prō + vorsus = forwards, further],** adv., in a word, 280, 445; exactly, 297; in short, 486.

**prō-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum,** proscribe, 703.

**prō-scriptiō, -ōnis, f.,** proscription, 416.

**prō-scriptus, -ī, m.,** proscribed, 1054.

**prō-sperē, adv., prōsperē cedere**  
= succeed, 500; cf. 1171.

**prō-sperus, -a, -um, adj., forward-spurring;** favorable, 108.

**prō-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum,**  
blossom out, 151.

**prō-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum,**  
discern, 962; see to, 980; see to it, 1097; look out for, 1371.

**prōvincia, -ae, f.,** *province*, 346.

**proximus, see propior.**

**prūdēns, -entis, adj., [prōv(i)-dēns],** able, 156.

**psallō, -ere, -ī, —, (sing and) play,** 477.

**pūblicē, adv. [pūblicus],** from the state, 211; as a state, 745; in the name of the state, 929; on the part of the state, 1151.

**pūblicō (ī), [pūblicus],** confiscate, 1082.

**pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus],**  
common, 650; **rēs pūblica** = state, 43, 87, 96, 166; politics, 55, 70; public life, 63; government, 202, 559, 849; **contrā rem pūblicam sentire** = entertain disloyalty toward the state, 497; **fidēs pūblica** = state's guarantee of impunity, 863, 894; **rem publicam capessere** = engage in public affairs, 1104.

**puḍicitia, -ae, f. [puḍor],** chastity; 221, 237, 265, 480; virtue, 1179.

**puḍor, -ōris, m.,** modesty, 56, 221; sense of shame, 284; propriety, 1235.

**puer, -erī, m, child;** lad, 989.

**pugnō (ī), [pugna],** by assault, 145; fight, 169.

**pulcher, -chra, -chrom, adj., bright;**  
glorious, 43, 368, 1144; pure, 97.

**putō (ī), reckon;** see, 23; think, 50, 52, 125; regard, 141, 674; consider, 889, 1078.

## Q

**quā, adv. [quī],** where, 1284.

**quaerō, -ere, -sivī, -sītum, seek,** 7, 41, 979; ask, 627.

**quaestor, -ōris, m. [quaerō],**  
quaestor, 343.

**quaestus, -ūs, m. [quaerō],** money-getting, 244, 469.

**quam**, adv. [**quī**], how, 106; 100, 316; with comp. = than, 7, 116, 129, 866; with superl. = as . . . as possible, 9, 72, 323, 1291, **suprā quam** = more than, 81; **quam ob rem** = wherefore, 645, 1025.

**quam-vīs**, adv., however, 458.

**quantum**, adv. [**quantus**], how much, 131.

**quantus**, -a, -um, adj., (1) interrogative [cf. **quis**], how great, 97, 524; how large, 535.

(2) rel. adj. [cf. **quī**], as, 154; **quantō** + comp. : : **tantō** + comp. = the more . . . the more, 1140.

**quā propter**, adv., wherefore, 1309.

**quārtus**, -a, -um, adj. [**quattuor**], fourth.

**quasi**, adv. and conj. [**quam** + **sī**], as it were, 181; as, 190; as if, 199, 751; so to speak, 457; **proinde quasi** = just as if, 230, 1132.

-**que**, enclitic conj., *and*, 55; -**que** : : -**que** = both : : and, 116, 675.

**queō**, -īre, -ivī, -itum, *be able*; can, 921.

**querer**, -ī, **questus sum**, with **dē**, *sign*; complain, 514, 753, 792, 1108.

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, gen. **cuius**, rel. pron. *who*, 1; which, 8; at beginning of clause = this, and this, but this.

**quī** [old abl. of **quis**], inter. adv., how, 103.

**quia**, conj. [rel. adv., cf. **quod**], because, 49, 151.

**quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, indef. rel. pron. [**quī** + **eumque**], whatever, 248; whoever, 705.

**quid**, see **quis**.

**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, indef. pron. [**quī**], a certain, 465; one, 743, 891, 1348.

**quidem**, adv., *indeed*, 46.

**quies**, -ētis, f., *rest*; repose, 277; peace, 567.

**quiētus**, -a, -um, adj. [**quies**], inactive, 491; at rest, 638; **quiēta**, -ōrum, n. pl., peace, 413.

**quīn**, conj. [**quī** + **ne**], why not, 402; but that, 733; without, 1219.

**quīlibet**, indef. pron. [**quī** + **libet**], whoever or whatever you please, 82.

**quippe**, conj. [**quī** + -**pe**], for, 214, 346, 1145; inasmuch, 234; since, 889.

**quis** or **quī**, **quae**, **quid** or **quod**, gen., **cuius**, inter. pron. or inter. adj. pron., who? 390, 1033, 1062.

**quis**, **qua**, **quid**, gen., **cuius**, indef. pron., after **sī** or **nē**, any one, 255; anybody, 558; **quid**, acc. n. = why, 231.

**quis-nam**, or **quīnam**, **quaenam**, **quidnam** or **quodnam**, inter. pron., who or what in the world; what, 768.

**quis-quam**, **quaequam**, **quicquam**, indef. pron. or indef. adj. pron., any one, 81, 266; anything, 88, 227; any, 568, 1315; anybody at all, 963; **quicquam pēnsī habēre** = care a straw for, 446; **haud sānē quisquam** = hardly any one at all, 1216.

**quis-que**, **quaeque**, **quidque** or **quodque**, indef. pron., each one, 20, 52, 260; each, 69, 563; every, 156, 467; **optumus quisque** =

best men, 33; every man, 127, 139;  
every good man, 157, 635;  
**euiusque modī** = every, 741.

**quis-quis**, =, **quicquid** or **quid-**  
**quid**, indef. rel. pron., whoever,  
whatever, 1035.

**quī-vīs, quaevis, quidvis** or  
**quod-vīs**, indef. pron., any one  
you please, 319.

**quō**, adv. [**quī**], wherefore, 700;  
**quō ūsque** = how long, 383;  
**quō minus . . . eō magis** = the  
more . . . the more, 1237.

Conj., with comparatives, in order  
that, 206, 250, 435, 609; **quōmi-**  
**nus** = from, 1065; that not, 1077.

**quō-eumque**, adv., whithersoever,  
1308.

**quod**, conj. [**quī**], because, 48, 70;  
that, 108, 171; the fact that, 205;  
**quod sī** = but if, 25, 255, 730;  
**quod nī** = and if not, 338; **quod**  
**modo** = if only it, 742.

**quoniam**, conj. [**quom**, old form of  
**eum** + **iam**], since, 7, 38.

## R

**rādix, -icis**, f., *root*; base, 1284.

**rapina, -ae**, f. [**rapīō**], plundering,  
79, 532; pillage, 292; plunder, 417.

**rapīō, -ere, -uī, raptum**, *snatch*;  
plunder, 203, 220; carry off, 211;  
seize, 989.

**ratio, -ōnis**, f. [**reor**], plan, 756,  
1270; interest, 823.

**ratus**, see **reor**.

**re(d)-**, inseparable prefix, (1) again,  
(2) against, (3) back, (4) away.

**re-cipīō, -ere, -eēpī, -ceptum** [**re-**  
+ **capīō**], recover, 202.

**re-eitō** (1), *read*, 546, 640.

**rēetē**, adv. [**rēetus**], suitably, 969.

**rēetus, -a, -um**, adj. [**regō** = *direct*],  
right, proper; **rēctius** = better, 6.

**re(d)-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum**  
[**re(d)-** + **dō**], deliver, 641.

**redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum**  
[**re(d)-** + **emō**], buy, release  
from, 250.

**re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum**,  
lay, 536; lay before the Senate, 907;  
lay before, 947.

**rē-fert, -ferre, -tulit**, =, *impers.*,  
it is important, 1137.

**re-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** [**re-** +  
**faciō**], revive, 900.

**regiō, -ōnis**, f. [**regō**], section, 530.

**rēgius, -a, -um**, adj. [**rex**], of  
kings, 121.

**rēgnum, -ī**, n. [**regō**], power, 88;  
supreme power, 871.

**re-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum** [**re-**  
+ **gradior**], return, 68.

**religiōsus, -a, -um**, adj. [**re-** + **ligō**],  
devout, 225.

**re-liquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum**,  
leave, 97, 1378; desert, 170; be-  
queath, 229; abandon, 1323; leave  
behind, 1336.

**re-liquus, -a, -um**, adj., the rest, 59,  
856; remainder, 63; that which  
remains, 656; **nihil reliquī fa-**  
**cere** = leave nothing, 213, 532;  
**reliquī habere** = have left, 400;  
**reliquī** = the rest, 913; **nihil fierī**  
**reliquī** = nothing left, 1099.

**re-medium, -ī**, n. [**re-** + **medeor** =  
*heal*], relief, 754.

**re-moveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtum**,  
take away, 1340.

**reor, rēri, ratus sum**, *reckon*; deem,  
903; think, 1240.

**repente**, adv., *suddenly*, 449, 567.  
**re-periō**, -ire, **repperī**, **repertum** [re- + pariō], find, 983, 1387.  
**re-petō**, -ere, -ivī, -itum, make investigations, 95; **pecūniae re-petundae** = extortion, 326, 924.  
**re-prehendō**, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, censure, 50, 1033.  
**re-pudiō** (1), [re- + pudet], spurn, 826; scorn, 1268.  
**re-pulsa**, -ae, f. [re- + pellō], political defeat, 383.  
**re-putō** (1), reflect upon, 1093.  
**re-quiēs**, -ētis, f., acc. **requiem**, rest, 1022.  
**re-quiēscō**, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum [cf. **requiēs**], find rest, 63.  
**re-quirō**, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum [re- + quaerō], hunt up, 744; inquire, 751.  
**rēs**, **rei**, f., *thing*; affairs, 27, 774, 1288; condition, 42, 82, 405, 686, 1091, 1290; deed, 47; matter, 94, 356, 536, 1013, 1165; recital, 146; thing, 147; circumstance, 179, 455, 946, 1051; worth, 187; reason, 266; scheme, 336; force of events, 390; resources, 412; subject, 440; plan, 488; situation, 549; crime, 561; means, 601; experience, 643; state of affairs, 728; business, 832; arrangements, 843; charge, 903, 907; occasion, 927; existing circumstances, 1095; case, 1144; course of events, 1185; chance, 1218; battle, 1366; **rēs militāris** = art of war, 13; **rēs gestae** = history, 48, 68; deeds, 149; **rēs familiāris** = means, 90, 393; **secundae rēs** = prosperity, 214; **in rem esse** = be to advantage, 360; **opportūna rēs**

= opportunity, 364; **novae rēs** = revolution, 528, 682, 884; **quam ob rem** = wherefore, 645, 1025; **ea rēs** = it, 760; **rēs capitālis** = capital crime, 667, 1195; **tantam rem mentiri** = invent such a lie, 911; **rēs dubiae** = critical matters, 960; **rēs habet** = the fact is, 1021; **mala res** = crime, 1119; **vindex rērum capitālium** = executioner, 1249; **quō locō rēs sint** = what the situation is, 1304; **rēs pūblica**, see **pūblicus**.  
**resistō**, -ere, -stitī, — [re- + sistō = *stand*], withstand, 636, 1368.  
**re-spondeō**, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum [re- + spondeō = *promise*], reply, 629; declare, 875.  
**re-stinguō**, -ere, -īnxi, -īnctum [re- + stinguō = *quench*], quench, 593.  
**re-stituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [re- + statuō], restore, 626, 710.  
**reticeō**, -ēre, -uī, — [re- + taceō], keep secret, 444.  
**retineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [re- + teneō], keep, 29, 909, 1080, 1102.  
**re-trahō**, -ere, -trāxi, -trāctus, bring back, 737, 881.  
**reus**, -ī, m. [**rēs**], charged with, 327.  
**re-vocō** (1), recall, 170.  
**re-vortō**, -ere, -vorti, —, return, 708.  
**rēx**, **rēgis**, m. [**regō**], king, 17.  
**rogitō** (1), [*freq.* of **rogō**], make constant inquiries, 573.  
**rogō** (1), *ask*; beseech, 660; ask for, 958; entreat, 1356.  
**ruīna**, ae, f. [**ruō** = *fall down*], ruin, 592.

**rūmor**, -ōris, m., *common talk*; report, 537.

**rūpēs**, -is, f. [**rumpo** = *break*], rock, 1343.

**rūrsus** [= **revorsus**, part. of **revortō**], adv., in turn, 336; again, 512, 1213.

## S

**sacer**, -cra, -crum, adj., *sacred*, 212.

**sacerdōs**, -ōtis, f. [**sacer**], priest-ess, 269.

**sacerdōtium**, -ī, n. [**sacer**], priestly office, 417.

**sacrilegus**, -ī, m. [**sacer** + **legō**], robber of sacred things, 251.

**sacrum**, -ī, n. [**sacer**], rite, 434.

**saepe**, adv., *often*, 168, 359, 874, 1107; frequently, 481.

**saepe-numerō**, adv., very often, 1106, 1205.

**saeviō**, -īre, -iī, -itum [**saevus**], rage, 177.

**saevitia**, -ae, f. [**saevus**], inhumanity, 615; severities, 988.

**saevus**, -a, -um, adj., *fierce*; harsh, 355, 1010.

**saltō** (1), [*freq.* of **saliō** = *leap*], dance, 477.

**salūs**, -ūtis, f., *safety*; welfare, 1086.

**salūtō** (1), [**salūs**], pay respects to, 522.

**sānē**, adv. [**sanus** = *sound*], certainly, 296.

**sanguis**, -inis, m., *blood*, 253.

**sapiēns**, -entis, adj. [**sapiō** = *taste*], sensible, 198; wise, 214.

**sapientia**, -ae, f. [**sapiō**], wisdom, 84, 119; intelligence, 1078.

**satis**, adv., *enough*; sufficiently, 20, 109, 149, 302; enough, 476; fully,

536; noun with partitive gen., enough, 84.

**satisfactiō**, -ōnis, f. [**satis** + **faciō**], explanation, 646.

**saucius**, -a, -um, adj., *wounded*, 1370.

**scelerātus**, -ī, m. [**scelus**], scoundrel, 1123; adj., wicked, 1190.

**scelestus**, -a, -um, adj. [**scelus**], sinful, 274; infamous, 1049; pl., criminals, 1132.

**scelus**, -eris, n., *evil deed*; crime, 74, 90, 228; wickedness, 431, 638, 1009.

**scilicet** [= **scire licet**], adv., why! 287; to be sure, 995; of course, 1165.

**sciō**, **scire**, **scivī**, **scitum**, *distinct*; know, 263, 866.

**scortum**, ī, n., *skin*; courtesan, 135, 261.

**scribō**, -ere, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, *scratch*; write, 45, 48; write out, 547, 642; enroll, 598.

**scrīnium**, -ī, n. [cf. **scribō**], letter case, 859.

**scriptor**, -ōris, m. [**scribō**], writer, 47, 151.

**sē(d)**-, inseparable prefix, (1) without, (2) apart.

**sē-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, retire, 361; withdraw, 621.

**secundus**, -a, -um, adj. [**sequor**], favorable; **secundae rēs** = prosperity, 214.

**sed**, conj. [cf. **sē(d)**-, now, 4, 12; but, 35, 67; however, 41; but also, 54.

**sēdēs**, -is, f. [**sedeō** = *sit*], abode, 101.

**sēditio**, -ōnis, f. [**sē(d)**- + **eō**], insurrection, 639; disturbance, 687; dissension, 1050.

**sēdō** (1), [**sedeō**], calm, 277.

**sēmet** [**sē** + **met**], reflexive pron., 3d person.

**semper**, adv., *always*, 32, 86.

**senātor**, -ōris, m. [**senex** = *old*], senator, 545.

**senātorius**, -a, -um, adj. [**senātor**], senatorial, 305.

**senātus**, -ūs and -ī, m. [**senex**], the Senate, 536.

**sententia**, -ae, f. [**sentiō**], opinion, 950; view, 1092; **pedibus in sententiam ire** = adopt the opinion, 955; **sententiās dicere** = express opinion, 986.

**sentina**, -ae, f., *bilge-water*; cess-pool, 693.

**sentiō**, -īre, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, *feel*, 655; **contrā rem publicam sentire** = entertain disloyalty toward the state, 497.

**separatim**, adv. [**sē** + **parō**], *individually*, 1154.

**sequor**, -ī, **secutus sum**, *follow*, 47, 217; cherish, 657; practice, 1152; strive for, 1323.

**sermō**, -ōnis, m., *a speaking*; conversation, 764, 870; **sermōne uti** = engage in conversation, 486.

**servilis**, -e, adj. [**servus**], *unseemly*, 66; of slaves, 551.

**serviō** (4), [**servus**], *be a slave*, 409; serve, 1155.

**servitium**, -ī, n. [**servus**], *obedience*, 5; pl., slaves, 474, 826, 832, 944, 1268.

**servitūs**, -ūtis, f. [**servus**], *slavery*, 886, 1046.

**servō** (1), [*cf.* **servus**], *preserve*, 588; guard, 1169.

**servus**, -ī, m., *slave*, 560.

**sestertia**, -ōrum, n. pl. [**sēmis** = *half* + **tertius**], thousands of sesterces, 561.

**seu**, see **sive**.

**severitas**, -ātis, f. [**severus** = *harsh*], *austerity*, 1225, 1233.

**sī**, conj. *if*; **sī modo** = *if only*, 755, 1065; **sī maxumē animus ferat** = *however much we may desire it*, 1306.

**sīc**, adv., *thus*, 411.

**sīc-ut** (**sīc-utī**), adv., *as*, 36, 100, 149, 434; *just as*, 54; *as if*, 286; *in case*, 578.

**signātor**, -ōris, m. [**signum**], *forgery*, 282.

**signō** (1), [**signum**], *seal*, 812.

**signum**, -ī, n. *mark*; standard, 170, 1366; statues, 210, 396, 1100; signal, 339; seal, 876; **signa canere** = *give signal for battle*, 1338.

**silentium**, -ī, n. [**sileō**], *silence*; **silentio** = *unnoticed*, 2.

**sileō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *be silent*; pass in silence, 39.

**similis**, -e, with dat. [**simul**], *like*, 257.

**similitūdō**, -inis, f. [**simul**], *similarity*, 121.

**simul**, adv., *together*; at the same time, 31, 290, 836, 1139; and also, 347, 369; *simultaneously*, 624; **simul ac** = *as soon as*, 132.

**simulātor**, -ōris, m. [**simul**], *pretender*, 83.

**simulō** (1), [**simul**], *make pretence*, 719; feign, 776.

**simultas**, -ātis, f. [**simul**], *dissension*, 163.

**sin**, conj. [**sī** + **ne**], but if, 984.  
**sine**, prep. with abl. *without*, 19, 103;  
 apart from, 157.  
**singillatim**, adv. [**singulī**], person-  
 ally, 931.  
**singulī**, -ae, -a, adj., pl.; one by one,  
 300; one at a time, 359.  
**sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., *left*; on  
 the left, 1342.  
**sinus**, -ūs, m., *fold*; in **sinū** = in  
 the heart of, 1187.  
**sis**, -is, f., *thirst*, 239.  
**situs**, -a, -um, adj. [**sinō** = *put*],  
 dependent, 4; set, 404; in **ex-**  
**trēmō situm esse** = be placed  
 on verge of destruction, 1120.  
**sī-ve** or **seu**, conj.; or; **sive** . . . **sive**  
 = whether . . . or, 579; **seu** . . .  
**seu**, 935.  
**societas**, -ātis, f. [**sequor**], partici-  
 pation, 744; alliance, 818; **per**  
**societatem** = by sharing, 913.  
**socius**, -ī, m. [**sequor**], ally, 115,  
 229, 765; 1068, 1105; accomplice,  
 290; confederate, 339, 804, 866,  
 1258; friend, 1121.  
**sōcordia**, -ae, f. [**sōcoris**], inde-  
 lence, 64; sloth, 1171, 1301.  
**sōl**, **sōlis**, m., *sun*, 673.  
**soleō**, -ēre, **solitus sum**, *be ac-*  
*customed*; *be went*, 451; *be*  
*usual*, 538, 549; *be accustomed*,  
 867.  
**sollemnis**, -e, adj. [\***sollus** = **tōtus**  
 + **annus**], religious, 434.  
**solllicitō** (1), [\***sollus** + **sicō**],  
 incite to revolt, 472, 662, 740;  
 tamper with, 527; instigate, 942.  
**sōlum**, adv. [**sōlus**], only, 741.  
**sōlus**, -a, -um, gen. **sōlius**, dat. **sōlī**,  
 adj., *alone*; 1136.

**solūtus**, -a, -um, adj. [**solvō**], un-  
 restrained, 103.  
**solvō**, -ere, **solvī**, **solūtum**, *loose*;  
*pay*, 619, 652.  
**somnus**, ī, m., *sleep*, 35, 239.  
**sōns**, **sontis**, adj., *guilty*, 286.  
**sparus**, -ī, m., hunting spear, 1262.  
**spatium**, -ī, n., *space*; time, 1241.  
**speciēs**, -i, f., *look*; guise, 715.  
**speciō** (1), [cf. **speciēs**], test, 363.  
**spērō** (1), *hope*, 408; *hope for*, 697;  
*expect*, 752.  
**spēs**, **spēi**, f., *hope*, 70; prospects,  
 399; expectations, 412; in **spē**  
**habēre** = expect, 585; in **maxi-**  
**mam spem addūcere** = raise  
 hopes, 757; in **spē victōriæ** =  
 be expected from victory, 770.  
**spirō** (1), *breathe*, 1388.  
**spoliō** (1), [**spolium**], rob, 212;  
 pillage, 991; plunder, 1395.  
**spolium**, -ī, n., *spoils*, 405.  
**statuō**, -ere, -uī, -ātum [cf. **status**],  
 determine, 68, 646; fix, 666, 1062;  
 decide, 1036, 1290; pass sentence,  
 1096, 1138, 1177.  
**status**, -ūs, m. [**stō** = *stand*], posi-  
 tion, 649; condition, 751.  
**stimulō** (1), *goad*; impel, 331.  
**stipātor**, -ōris, pl. [**stipō** = *crowd*],  
 attendants, 247.  
**stipendium**, -ī, n. [cf. **stips** +  
**pendō**], tribute, 378.  
**stirps**, **stirpis**, f., ab **stirpe**, root  
 and branch, 176.  
**strēnuus**, -a, -um, adj., *brisk*; reso-  
 lute, 378; vigorous, 1011, 1235;  
 active, 1294; energetic, 1393.  
**studeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *be eager*; de-  
 sire, 1, 687; favor, 1004.  
**studēre** = *be eager*; [**studeō**], zeal, 547.



67; yearning, 198; desire, 260, 683; natural inclination, 769, 1233.  
**stultus**, -a, -um, adj., *foolish*; 1046.  
**stuprum**, -ī, n., *defilement*; debauchery, 236; act of debauchery, 268; prostitution, 468; **stuprī vetus cōnsuētūdō** = unbecoming intimacy of long standing, 447.  
**sub**, prep. with acc., *under*; at, 1283; (in cpds.), under, away; with adjs. has force of a diminutive suffix.  
**sub-dolus**, -a, -um, adj., *crafty*, 82.  
**sub-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, draw off, 1347.  
**sub-igō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum [**sub** + **agō**], conquer, 22; overcome, 176; impel, 185; constrain, 1017.  
**sub-levō** (1), alleviate, 1226.  
**sub-sidium**, -ī, n. [**sub** + **sedeō**], reserve, 1344.  
**sub-vortō**, -ere, -vortī, -vorsum, undermine, 183; level, 232.  
**suc-currō**, -ere, -currī, -cursum [**sub** + **currō**], with dat., run to help, 1370.  
**sudis**, -is, f., *stake*, 1263.  
**suī** (gen.), reflexive pron., of himself, herself, itself, themselves; of him, her, it, them; **per sē** = in themselves, 15; **inter sē** = to each other, 435.  
**sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, be, 4; serve as, 849, 888; consist, 890; with dat. of possession = have, 55; **auxiliō esse** = come to help, 111; **in rem esse** = be to advantage, 360; **post esse** = be forgotten, 459; **cum tēlō esse** = go armed, 509, 934; **opus est** = there is need, 588; **ūsui esse** = be of advantage, 598; **in armīs esse** = serve in arms,

696, 1020; **nōn ita est** = far from it, 996; **in manū esse** = be at one's command, 1060; **in dubiō esse** = be at stake, 1105; **suprā caput esse** = be close at hand, 1160.

**summus**, see **superus**.

**sūmō**, -ere, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptum** [**sub** + **emō**], adopt, 1067; **mūtuus sūmptus** = secured on a loan, 465; **supplicium sūmere** = inflict punishment, 954, 1196, 1254; **summum supplicium sūmere** = inflict capital punishment, 1072.

**sūmptus**, -ūs, m. [**sūmō**], extravagance, 244; expense, 262, 468.

**super** (in cpds.), above.

**superbia**, -ae, f. [cf. **super**], haughtiness, 31, 123; insolence, 183, 386, 620; arrogance, 220, 459, 1006, 1064; haughty spirit, 573.

**superbus**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **super** + **fuī**], haughty, 351.

**superior**, see **superus**, earlier, 356.

**superō** (1), [**super**], abound, 392; triumph over, 1212.

**superus**, -a, -um, adj. [**super**], comp., **superior**, victorious, 730; superl., **suprēmus** or **summus**, -a, -um, very great, 228, 329; extreme, 398, 566; supreme, 543; highest, 711, 902; **summā ope** = with all one's might, 2, 714.

**super-vacāneus**, -a, -um, adj. [**super** + **vacuus**], needless, 1019; unnecessary, 1318.

**sup-petō**, -ere, -īvī, -ītum [**sub** + **petō**], be at hand, 286.

**sup-plex**, -icis, n. [**sub** + **plicō** = *fold*], suppliant, 572, 630.

**sup-plicium**, -ī, n. [cf. **supplex**], religious right, 164; entreaty, 1169; execution, 1242; **supplicium sūmere** = inflict punishment, 953, 1195; **summum supplicium sūmere** = inflict capital punishment, 1072.

**suprā**, adv. [**super**], more than, 52; before, 91; from times past, 95; above, 281; **suprā quam** = more than, 81; **suprā caput esse** = be close at hand, 1160.

**sus-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**subs** (= **sub**) + **capiō**], engage in, 526; espouse, 651.

**su-spectus**, -a, -um, adj. [**sub** + **speciō** = *look*], furnishing suspicion, 129.

**su-spīciō**, -ōnis, f. [**sub** + **speciō**], mistrust, 655.

**su-spīcor** (1), [**sub** + **speciō**], suspect, 814.

**sus-tentō** (1), [*freq.* of **sustineō**], withstand, 1214.

**sus-tineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**subs** (= **sub**) + **teneō**], be responsible for, 1205.

**suus**, -a, -um, poss. pron. reflex. adj., *own*; his own, 19, 158; his, 80.

## T

**tābēs**, -is, f., *a melting*; pestilence, 679.

**tabula**, -ae, f., *board*; picture, 395, 1100; **tabula picta** = painting, 210; **novae tabulae** = cancellation of debt, 416.

**taeter**, -tra, -trum, adj., *foul*; loathsome, 1128.

**tālis**, -e, adj., *such*, 135, 140, 354.

**tam**, adv., *so*, 245.

**tamen**, adv., *nevertheless*; still, 47, 345; nevertheless, 58, 360, 675; however, 151, 194, 462; yet, 1285; on the other hand, 1392.

**tametsī**, conj. [**tam(en)** + **etsī**], although, 46, 57, 359.

**tam-quam**, adv., *as*, 247.

**tandem**, adv. [**tam** + demon. -**dem**], finally, 772.

**tantum modo**, adv., only, 389, 866, 1132.

**tantus**, -a, -um, adj., *so great*; such great, 58, 1205; so great, 131, 245; as remarkable, 154; so important, 995, 1013; such large, 1020; so much, 1079; **tantam rem mentīri** = invent such a lie, 911.

**tardē**, adv. [**tardus**], deliberately, 170.

**tardus**, -a, -um, adj., *slow*, 279.

**tegō**, -ere, **tēxī**, **tēctum**, *cover*; protect, 115; shield, 914, 1315; cover, 1384.

**tēlum**, -ī, n., *missile*; offensive weapons, 782, 1066; cf. 945; **cum tēlō esse** = go armed, 509.

**temere**, adv., *in the dark*; without due consideration, 584.

**temperō** (1), [**tempus**], exercise restraint, 215.

**tempestās**, -ātis, f. [**tempus**], time, 127, 316, 430; emergency, 367; pl., crisis, 1215.

**templum**, -ī, n., *a space marked out*; temple, 224.

**temptō** (1), [**tendō**], strive, 111; sound, 301; try, 502.

**tempus**, -oris, n., *time*; occasion, 95; opportunity, 405; emergency, 557; crisis, 904; circumstance, 1034.

- tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum** or **tēnsūm**, *stretch*; contrive, 507; stretch, 572; exert one's self, 1374.
- tenebrae, -ārum**, f. pl., *darkness*; gloom, 1248.
- teneō, -ere, -uī, tentum**, *hold*; restrain, 59; control, 726; possess, 1330.
- terra, -ae**, f, *land*, 291; **in terrīs** = on earth, 17; **terrārum orbis** = the world, 152; **terrā marique** = on land and sea, 238.
- terreo, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, *make tremble*; frighten, 727, 899; overawe, 1045.
- terribilis, -e**, adj. [**terreo**], *awful*, 1248.
- tertius, -a, -um**, num. adj. [cf. **ter** = *thrice*], third, 872.
- testis, -is**, m. and f., *witness*, 282.
- testor** (1), [**testis**], call to witness, 608.
- tetrarchēs, -ae**, m., *ruler of a fourth*; princes, 377.
- timeō, -ēre, -uī, —**, *fear*, 252, 272, 1031; be frightened at, 579.
- timidus, -a, -um**, adj. [**timeō**], frightened, 841; faint-hearted, 1199; cowardly, 1294, 1331.
- timor, -ōris**, m. [**timeō**], *fear*, 571, 1298.
- tolerō** (1), [cf. **tollō**], *endure*, 179, 469; bear, 391, 1208; withstand, 698; support, 1112.
- tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum**, *lift up*; suppress, 453; exalt, 885.
- toreuma, -atis**, n., *embossed work*, 396.
- torpescō, -ere, torpuī, —** [**torpeō** = *be stiff*], grow sluggish, 287.
- tōtus, -a, -um**, adj., *whole*; entire, 563; the whole of, 1133.
- trāctō** (1), [*freq.* of **trahō**], *govern*, 728; manage, 1042.
- trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum** [**trāns** + **dō**], *commit*, 659; give over, 882; hand over, 948; surrender, 1172; **sē tradere** = surrender, 837.
- trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum**, *drag*; take away, 146; waste, 203; squander, 397; drag off, 1055.
- trāmes, -itis**, m., *crossway*; byway, 1278.
- tranquillus, -a, -um**, adj., *calm*; undisturbed, 297.
- trāns** (in cpds.), (1) *across*, over; (2) *through*, through and through.
- trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum**, pass, 2.
- trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**, *transfer*, 33; postpone, 337.
- trānsigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum** [**trāns** + **agō**], *pass through*, 36.
- trepidō** (1), *scare*; alarm, 568.
- trēs, tria**, gen. **trium**, num. adj., *three*, 871.
- tribūnīcius, -a, -um**, adj. [**tribūnus**], of tribunes, 710.
- tribūnus, -ī**, m. [**tribus** = *a third*], tribune, 791.
- tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum** [**tribus**], *give*, 645.
- trīgintā**, indecl. num. adj., *thirty*, 1041.
- trīstitia, -ae**, f., *sadness*; gloom, 567.
- triumphō** (1), *triumph*; celebrate triumph, 554.
- trium-virī, -ōrum**, *three men* who had charge of prisons and executions; executioners, 1241.
- trucidō** (1), [(q) **tru-** (**quattuor**) + **caedere**], *quarter*; butcher, 1335.

**tū, tuī**, pers. pron., 2d person, thou, 367, 407, 409.

**tuba**, -ae, f. [cf. *tubus* = *tube*], trumpet, 1362.

**tueor**, -ēri, **tūtus** (*tuitus*) **sum**, *see*; protect, 535.

**tum**, adv., *then*, 19, 416; at that time, 762; **tum dēmum** = only then, 24; **iam tum** = now by that time, 337; by this time, 348.

**tumultus**, -ūs, m., *disturbance*; confusion, 797; commotion, 834; insurrection, 1353.

**turba**, -ae, f., *turmoil*, 687.

**turpitūdō**, -inis, f. [*turpis* = *ugly*], disgrace, 235; dishonor, 1320.

**tūtus**, -a, -um, adj. [*tueor*], safe, 296, 610, 771.

**tuus**, -a, -um, poss. pron. adj., *your*, 660.

## U

**ubi**, adv., *where*; when, 14, 51, 62, 166; where, 386; **ubi primum** = as soon as, 728.

**ubi-que**, adv., anywhere, 1068.

**ulcīscor**, -ī, **ultus sum**, *avenger*, 627.

**ūllus**, -a, -um, gen. **ūllius**, dat. **ūllī**, adj. [*dim.* of **ūnus**], any, 136, 395.

**ulterior**, -ius, adj. [cf. *ultrā*], farther, 779.

**ultrā**, adv., *beyond*, 1023.

**umquam**, adv., *ever*, 271.

**ūnā**, adv. [**ūnus**], along with, 408; together with, 1116.

**unde**, adv., *whence*; where, 1364.

**undique**, adv. [**unde** + **que**], from every direction, 251; on all sides, 1186.

**ūnivorsus**, -a, -um [**ūnus** + **vorsus**], adj., all together, 360.

**ūnus**, -a, -um, gen. **ūnīus**, dat. **ūnī**, num. adj., *one*, 104; **in ūnum** = to one place, 303.

**ūnus-quisque**, **ūnaquaeque**, **ūnumquidque**, indef. pron., each one, 425, 1355.

**urbānus**, -a, -um, adj. [*urbs*], of the city, 472.

**urbs**, **urbis**, f., *city*, 21, 145.

**urgeō**, -ēre, **ursi**, —, *work*; press on, 1187.

**ūsque**, adv., *all the way*; **ūsque eō** = to such a degree, 933.

**ūsus**, -ūs, m. [**ūtor**], experience, 133; intercourse, 256; advantage, 742; necessities, 889; utility, 964; **ūsui esse** = be of advantage, 598.

**ut** (**utī**), adv., *how*; as, 69, 260, 864; how, 97; conj., that, 414.

**uter-que**, **utraque**, **utrumque**, gen., **utriusque**, dat. **utrique**, adj. [**uter** = *whether* + **que**], both, 15, 39, 91, 553, 721, 922.

**utī**, *see ut*; **utī factō opus esse** = as circumstances demand, 833.

**ūtilis**, -e, adj. [**ūtor**], beneficial, 580.

**ūtor**, -ī, **ūsus sum**, *use*, 5; exercise, 230; spend, 292; manage, 490; avail one's self, 614; enjoy, 733, 926; make use of, 985; **sermōnī utī** = engage in conversation, 486.

**ut-pote**, adv. [**ut** + **potis**], in as much as, 1286.

**utrimque**, adv. [**uterque**], from both sides, 836; on both sides, 1376.

## V

**vacuus**, -a, -um, adj., *empty*; free, 256; empty, 273; free from, 962, defenseless, 1156.

**vagor** (1), [**vagus**], roam, 102.

- vagus**, -a, -um, adj., *wandering*, 107.
- valeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum, *be strong*; avail, 26; prevail, 162; gain headway, 267; succeed, 320; be vigorous, 380, 388; have power, 707; be efficacious, 964; become powerful, 1073; be strong, 1084; **nihil valet** = be of no avail, 965; **plūs valēre** = have more weight, 981.
- validus**, -a, -um, adj. [**valeō**], strong, 120.
- vānitās**, -ātis, f. [**vānus**], vain-glory, 444.
- vānus**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **vacuus**], useless, 1135; **vāna ingenia** = faithless men, 365.
- variē**, adv. [**varius**], in various ways, 1089; differently, 1398.
- varius**, -a, -um, adj., *diverse*; versatile, 82; **multī et variī** = many different, 1058.
- vās**, **vāsis**, pl. **vāsa**, -ōrum, n., *vase*, 211, 1052.
- vāstō** (1), [**vāstus**], make desolate, 278.
- vāstus**, -a, -um, adj., *empty*; unrestrained, 85.
- vēcordia**, -ae, f. [**vēcors** = *senseless*], madness, 280.
- vectīgal**, -ālis, n. [**vehō** = *carry*], tax, 1104.
- vectīgālis**, -e, adj. [**vectīgal**], tributary, 377.
- vehemēns**, -entis, adj., *very eager*; impetuous, 808.
- vehementer**, adv. [**vehemens**], with much insistence, 776.
- vel**, conj. [cf. **volō**], or; **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or, 120.
- vel-ut** (**vel-utī**), adv., as, 3, 53.
- vēnālis**, -e, adj. [cf. **vēnus** = *sale*], for sale, 184.
- vēndō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum [**vēnum** + **dō**], set a price on, 555.
- venēnum**, -ī, n., *drug*; **venēnum malum**, poison, 199.
- veniō**, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *come*, 499, 1364.
- vēnor** (1), *hunt*, 66.
- venter**, -tris, m., *belly*; appetite, 3, 35, 248.
- verber**, -eris, n. *lash*; stripes, 1025, 1071.
- verberō** (1), [**verber**], scourge, 1028.
- verbum**, -ī, n., *word*, 154; **verba loquī** = speak, 959; **verbō** = briefly, 1088; **multa verba facere** = speak at length, 1106.
- vērē** [**vērus** = *true*], truly, 72; accurately, 323.
- vereor**, -ērī, **veritus sum**, dread, 1058.
- vērum**, -ī, n. [**vērus** = *true*], truth, 148, 716, 962; **prō vērō** = as the truth, 1060; **vērum**, conj., but, 30, 150, 225, 484, 1178; **vērō**, doubtless, 20; indeed, 65, 689; but, 171, 888; **vērum enim vērō** = nay verily, 39; but certainly, 387; **immō vērō maxumē** = nay rather very much, 1166; **vērus**, -a, -um, right, 196; true, 647.
- vescor**, -ī, —, *feed on*; tickle the palate, 238.
- vestīmentum**, -ī, n. [**vestis** = *clothing*], garment, 1053.
- veterānus**, -a, -um, adj. [**vetus**], experienced, 1353; experienced soldier, 1367.

**vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum**, *forbid*, 1026.  
**vetus, -eris**, adj., *with years*; former, 292; old, 353; old time, 729.  
**vexō** (1), [cf. **vehō**], annoy, 61; aggravate, 93; waste, 397; harass, 943.  
**via, -ae, f.**, *way*, 196.  
**vīcinitās, -ātis, f.** [cf. **vīcus**], neighborhood, 662.  
**victor, -ōris, m.** [**vincō**], conqueror, 204, 1324; adj., victorious, 229, 1047.  
**victōria, -āe, f.** [**vincō**], conquest, 292.  
**vīctus, -ūs, m.** [**vīvō**], mode of living, 695.  
**vīcus, -ī, m.**, *row of houses*; street, 941.  
**vidēlicet** [= **vidēre licet**], adv., forsooth, 1130; evidently, 1167; of course, 1177.  
**videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsum**, *see*; witness, 231; see, 359; perceive, 752;  
**videor, -ēri, vīsus sum**, seem, 7, 40, 48, 909; appear, 789.  
**vigēō, -ēre, -uī, —**, *be strong*; flourish, 57; **viget aetās** = is in the prime of life, 388.  
**vīgēsumus, -a, -um**, num. adj. [**vīgintī** = *twenty*], twentieth, 874.  
**vigilia, -ae, f.** [**vigil** = *awake*], guard duty, 81; keeping watch, 277; sentinel, 564.  
**vigilō** (1), [**vigil** = *awake*], be on the lookout, 510; be watchful, 1229; **vigilandō** = vigilance, 1170.  
**vīlis, -e, adj.**, *cheap*, 284.  
**villa, -ae, f.** [*dim.* of **vīcus**], villa, 223; country seat, 1052, 1100.  
**vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum**, *conquer*; vanquish, 214; conquer, 227; exhaust, 398; win the day, 772; defeat, 927; win, 1312.

**vinculum, -ī, n.** [**vinciō** = *bind*], prison, 785; in **vinculis** = in confinement, 909; in custody, 1083.  
**vindex, -icis, m. and f., vindex rerum capitālium** = executioner, 1249.  
**vindicō** (1), [**vindex**], inflict punishment, 168; check by punishment, 189; assert one's claim to, 375.  
**vīnum, -ī, n.**, *wine*, 432.  
**violentia, -ae, f.** [**vīs**], oppression, 611; reverses, 1208.  
**vir, virī, m.**, *man*, 136; paramour, 472; husband, 476.  
**vīrēs**, see **vīs**.  
**virgō, -inis, f.**, *maid*; maiden, 269, 989.  
**virilis, -e, adj.** [**vir**], manly, 200, 391; masculine, 474.  
**virtūs, -ūtis, f.** [**vir**], mental prowess, 10, 34; excellence, 13, 164; merit, 51, 1153; moral excellence, 56; valor, 115, 1293; worth, 129, 1232; prowess, 137; good points, 154; virtue, 194; morality, 217; courage, 363, 1235, 1330; moral perfection, 1078; nobility, 1198; strength of character, 1216 = **animī virtūs** = mental prowess, 26; **per virtutem** = valorously, 384.  
**vīs, —**, acc. **vim**, abl. **vī, f.**, *force*; activity, 4; strength, 12, 679; power, 77, 904; force, 175, 658; fury, 1368, 1374; **per vim** = forcibly, 1132; **animī vīs** = valor, 1382; pl., **vīrēs**, = **ium**, physical force, 7.  
**vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsum** [cf. **videō**], examine, 224; see, 1395.  
**vīta, -ae, f.** [**vīvō**], life, 2; **vītam habēre** = spend life, 1000.

- vitium**, -ī, n., *blemish*; vice, 58; fault, 194; failing, 1214.
- vīvō**, -ere, **vīxī**, **victum**, *live*, 39, 105, 315.
- vīvus**, -a, -um, adj. [**vīvō**], alive, 1383.
- vix**, adv., with difficulty, 1080.
- vocābulum**, -ī, n. [**vocō**], name, 1118.
- vocō** (1), [cf. **vōx**], summon, 850.
- volgus**, -ī, n., *crowd*; rabble, 379; crowd, 537.
- volnerō** (1), [**volnus**], wound, 1394.
- volnus**, -eris, n., *wound*, 1386.
- volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, —, *will*; desire, 143, 303; wish, 319; want, 347, 382, 658; like, 370; consult, 618; will, 755.
- voltus**, -ūs, m., *countenance*; appearance, 188; expression, 280, 1389; countenance, 583.
- voluntārius**, -ī, m. [**volō**], as a volunteer, 1258.
- voluntās**, -ātis, f. [**volō**], approval, 353; will, 490.
- voluptārius**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **volō**], luxurious, 208.
- voluptās**, -ātis, f. [cf. **volō**], pleasure, 37, 1102.
- volvō**, -ere, **volvī**, **volūtum**, *roll*; turn over in mind, 595; reflect upon, 772; roll over, 1396.
- vorsor** (1), [freq. of **vortō** = *turn*], be engaged, 1369.
- vorsus**, adv. [cf. **vortō**], facing toward, 1265.
- vorsus**, -ūs, m. [**vortō**]; **vorsūs facere** = write verses, 485.
- voster**, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. adj., *your*, 363.
- vōtum**, -ī, n., *vow*, 1169.
- vōx**, -ōcis, f., *a calling*; voice, 583.

## VOCABULARY OF PROPER NAMES

### A

**A.** = \* *Aulus*.

**Ab-originēs, -um**, m. pl., *the Aborigines*, the supposedly original inhabitants of Italy and the reputed ancestors of the Romans.

**Aenēās, -ae**, m., the hero of Vergil's *Aeneid*, was a Trojan prince, son of Anchises and Venus, who, after the fall of Troy, wandered widely, visiting, among others, Dido at Carthage in Africa, and finally settled in Latium, where he founded Alba Longa, the mother city of Rome.

**Allobrogēs, -um**, m. pl., *the Allobrogi*, a Gallic tribe between the Alps on the east and the Rhone on the west, now Savoy, conquered by Fabius Maximus, 121 B.C. By pretending to join the conspiracy, they helped Cicero bring to light the conspiracy, capture the conspirators, and drive Catiline from Rome.

**Annius, -iī**, m., *Quintus Annius Chilo*, a senator and one of Catiline's accomplices.

**Antōnius, -iī**, m., *Gaius Antonius Hybrida*, uncle of Mark Antony, expelled from the senate in 70 B.C., colleague with Cicero in the praetorship 66, in the consulship 63;

supposedly, one of the conspirators, but as Cicero's colleague he had to lead an army against Catiline; governor of Macedonia 62, accused of extortion and, though defended by Cicero, convicted.

**Āpŭlia, -ae**, f., a district in south-eastern Italy.

**Arrētīnus, -a, -um**, adj., *of or pertaining to Arretium*, a town in Etruria, near Florence.

**Asia, -ae**, f., *Asia, Asia Minor*.

**Athēniēnsēs, -ium**, m. pl., *the Athenians*.

**Aurēlia Orestilla**, the second wife of Catiline.

**Autronius, P.**, *Paetus Autronius*, elected consul 66 B.C., but disqualified because of bribery, became one of the most prominent in the conspiracy.

### B

**Bēstia, -ae**, m., *L. Calpurnius Bestia*, one of Catiline's accomplices, a tribune.

**Bruttius, -a, -um**, adj., *ager B.*, *the country of the Bruttii*, the toe of Italy.

**Brŭtus, -ī**, m., *D. Junius Brutus*, consul in 77 B.C., husband of Sempronius.

\* The definition is in italics.



## C

**C.** = *Gaius*.

**Caepārius, -ī, m.,** *M. Caeparius*, of Terracina, one of Catiline's accomplices, executed in 63 B.C.

**Caesar, -aris, m.,** (1) *C. Julius Caesar*, born 100 B.C., held all offices in the gift of the people, member of first triumvirate with Pompey and Crassus, later rival and conqueror of Pompey, soldier, dictator, orator, historian.

(2) *Lucius Julius Caesar*, consul 64 B.C., uncle of Mark Antony.

**Camers, -ertis, m. and f.,** *Camer-tian*, an inhabitant of Camirinum in Umbria.

**Campus,** see **Martius, Campus Martius.**

**Capitō, -ōnis, m.,** *P. Gabinius Capito*, a knight and active conspirator with Catiline, one of the five captured and executed in 63 B.C.

**Capitōlium, -ī, n.,** *the Capitol*, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill in Rome.

**Capua, -ae, f.,** *Capua*, the principal city of Campania in southwestern Italy.

**Carthāginiēnsis, -is, m. and f.,** *a Carthaginian.*

**Carthāgo, -inis, f.,** *Carthage*, a powerful city on the northern shore of Africa, the reputed colony of Sidonian Dido; who, when forsaken by Aeneas, vowed for her nation eternal enmity to him and his descendants; a long-time rival of Rome until destroyed by Scipio in 146 B.C.

**Cassius, -ī, m.,** *L. Cassius Longinus*, a senator and one of the chief conspirators,

**Catilīna, -ae, m.,** *L. Sergius Catilina*, born 108 B.C., of patrician family, leader of the conspiracy, was praetor 68 B.C., propraetor in Africa 67 B.C., candidate for consulship 64 and 63 B.C., slain at the head of a rebellion January, 62 B.C.

**Catō, -ōnis, m.,** *M. Porcius Cato*, surnamed *Uticensis* because of his suicide at Utica after Caesar's victory over the aristocratic party at Thapsus in 46 B.C.; great-grandson of Cato the Censor; born 95 B.C., tribune 63 B.C.; took the side of Cicero as to the imposition of the death penalty upon the Catilinarian conspirators.

**Catulus, -ī, m.,** *Q. Lutatius Catulus*, consul 78 B.C., censor 65, a conservative, a respected leader of the senatorial party.

**Celer, -eris, m.,** see **Metellus Celer.**

**Cethēgus, -ī, m.,** *C. Cornelius Cethegus*, a senator but a leading member of the conspiracy, executed in 63 B.C.

**Cicerō, -ōnis, m.,** *M. Tullius Cicero*, the great Roman orator who led the fight against Catiline, born 106 B.C. at Arpinum, quaestor 75, aedile 69, praetor 66, consul with Antonius 63, banished 58-57, joined Pompey against Caesar in the civil war, pardoned by Caesar, brought before the public in opposition to Mark Antony after Caesar's death, proscribed and assassinated 43. He was more than an orator and a statesman. His philosophical works and general treatises are his greatest contributions,

**Cimbricus**, -a, -um, adj., *Cimbrian*, pertaining to the *Cimbri*, a German tribe, a serious menace to the Romans during the years 113-101: they and the *Teutons* routed more than one Roman army and threatened to invade Italy. The *Teutons* were utterly routed by Marius near *Aquae Sextiae* (Aix) in Gaul 102 B.C., and the *Cimbri* at *Campi Raudii* in northern Italy, 101 B.C.

**Cinna**, -ae, m., *L. Cornelius Cinna*, Marius's colleague, Sulla's opponent, consul 87-84, slain in 84 by his own troops.

**Cn.** = *Gnaeus*.

**Concordia**, -ae, f., the goddess of Concord in whose temple the senate often met.

**Cornēlius**, -ī, m., *C. Cornelius*, a knight; one of the two conspirators who volunteered to assassinate Cicero.

**Cornificius**, -ī, m., *Q. Cornificius*, tribune of the plebs 69 B.C., praetor 66, candidate for the consulship 63, famous for honesty and literary merit.

**Cotta**, -ae, m., *L. Aurelius Cotta*, praetor in 70 B.C., consul in 65.

**Crassus**, -ī, m., *M. Licinius Crassus*, called the rich, born 114 B.C., praetor 71, consul with Pompey 70 and 55, a member of the first triumvirate with Caesar and Pompey in 60, defeated by the Parthians and treacherously slain 53. He was mentioned, but probably erroneously, in connection with Catiline's conspiracy.

**Crēticus**, -ī, m., the cognomen of *Q. Caecilius Metellus*, who subdued Crete 67 B.C.

**Crotōniēnsis**, -e, adj., *Crotonian*, of *Crotona*, a city in Bruttium, the province in the toe of Italy.

**Cūrius**, -ī, m., *Q. Curius*, a senator, a conspirator who told his secrets to Fulvia, who betrayed them to Cicero.

**Cȳrus**, -ī, m., *Cyrus the Great*, the founder of the Persian empire, 559 B.C. He subdued the Medes, the Lydian empire, the Greek cities of Asia Minor, Babylon. He is reported to have been slain in 529 by Tomyris, Queen of the Massagetae, a Scythian tribe.

## D

**D.** = *Decimus*.

**Damasippus**, -ī, m., *L. Junius Brutus Damasippus*, praetor urbanus 83 B.C., of the Marian party, who slew many of Sulla's party and was in turn slain by Sulla.

**December**, -bris, adj., *December*.

## E

**Etrūria**, -ae, f., a country in middle Italy, north of the Tiber and west of the Apennines.

## F

**Fabius**, -ī, m., *Q. Fabius Sanga*, patron of the Allobrogi.

**Faesulae**, -ārum, f. pl., *Faesulae*, a city of northern Etruria, now Fiesole, near Florence.

**Faesulānus**, -a, -um, adj., of *Faesulae*, *Faesulan*.

**Faesulānus**, -ī, m., *a Faesulan*.

**Februārius**, -a, -um, adj., *February*, of *February*.

**Fidius**, -ī, m., *God of Faith* (Jupiter); **mē dius Fidius** (juvet), (*so help*) *me the God of Faith*.

**Figulus**, -ī, m., *C. Marcius Figulus*, consul in 64 B.C.

**Flaccus**, -ī, m., *L. Valerius Flaccus*, praetor 63 B.C., one of the officers who arrested Volturcius and the Allobrogian ambassadors, propraetor in Asia Minor 62, successfully defended against a charge of extortion by Cicero in a speech which is for the most part extant.

**Flamīnius**, -ī, m., *C. Flaminius*, one of Catiline's helpers in Arretium of Etruria.

**Fulvia**, -ae, f., the mistress of Quintus Curius, one of the conspirators, by whose confidences she betrayed all the plans of the conspiracy to Cicero.

**Fulvius**, -ī, m., (1) *M. Fulvius Nobilior*, of equestrian rank and one of Catiline's followers.

(2) *A. Fulvius*, the son of a senator, put to death by his father for joining the conspiracy of Catiline.

**Furius**, -ī, m., *P. Furius*, one of the conspirators who was especially active in tampering with the Allobrogians.

## G

**Gabīnius**, -ī, m., *P. Gabinius Capito* (*Cimber*), a knight and Catilinarian conspirator, one of the five captured and executed 63 B.C.

**Gallia**, -ae, f., *Gaul*. (1) **Gallia Citerior**, *Hither* or *Cisalpine Gaul*, south of the Alps in northern Italy.

(2) **Gallia Ulterior** or **Transalpīna**, *Farther* or *Transalpine Gaul*, north and west of the Alps, including modern France, Switzerland, Holland, Belgium, and western Germany.

**Galicānus**, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*.

**Galicus**, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*, of *Gaul*.

**Gallus**, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*, of *Gaul*.

**Gallus**, -ī, m., *a Gaul*, especially the Allobrogians.

**Graecia**, -ae, f., *Greece*.

**Graecus**, -a, -um, adj., *Greek*.

**Graecus**, -ī, m., *a Greek*.

## H

**Hispanīa**, -ae, f., *Spain*, divided into *Hispania Citerior* and *Hispania Ulterior*, north and south respectively of the Ebro River.

**Hispanus**, -a, -um, adj., *Spanish*.

**Hispanus**, -ī, m., *a Spaniard*.

## I

**Iānuārius**, -a, -um, adj., *January*, of *January*.

**Italia**, -ae, f., *Italy*.

**Iūlius**, -ī, m., *C. Julius*, one of Catiline's conspirators.

**Iūnius**, -ī, m., see **Brūtus**, **Damaspippus** and **Silānus**.

**Iūnius**, -a, -um, adj., of *June*, *June*.

**Iuppiter**, **Iovis**, m., *Jupiter*, the father of gods and men, chief Roman god and lord of heaven.

## K

**Kalendae**, -ārum, f. pl., *the Kalends*, the first day of the Roman month.

## L

**L.** = *Lucius*.

**Lacedaemonius**, -ī, m. [**Lacedaemon**, *Sparta*], a Lacedaemonian, a Spartan.

**Laeca**, -ae, m., *M. Porcius Laeca*, a senator and the conspirator at whose home the famous gathering of conspirators took place, Nov. 6, 63.

**Latīnus**, -a, -um, adj., *Latin*.

**Lentulus**, -ī, m., (1) *P. Cornelius Lentulus Spinther*, aedile 63 B.C., praetor 60, consul 57, one of Cicero's staunchest friends.

(2) *P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura*, quaestor 81 B.C., praetor 75, consul 71, expelled from the senate 70, praetor again 63, next in importance to Catiline in the conspiracy, put to death in prison.

**Lepidus**, -ī, m., *M' Aemilius Lepidus*, consul in 66 B.C.

**Līcinius**, see **Crassus** and **Murēna**.

**Longinus**, -ī, m., *L. Cassius Longinus*, a senator and one of the chief conspirators.

## M

**M.** = *Marcus*.

**M'** = *Manius*.

**Macedonicus**, -a, -um, adj., *Macedonian*.

**Mānliānus**, -a, -um, adj., *Manlian*, of *Manlius*.

**Mānlius**, -ī, m., (1) *A. Manlius Torquatus*, dictator and consul;

the incident related in ch. 52 took place in the Latin war, 340 B.C.

(2) *C. Manlius*, Catiline's leader in the field, slain in the battle of Pistoria, 62 B.C.

(3) *L. Manlius Torquatus*, consul in 65 B.C.

**Mārcius**, -ī, m., *Q. Marcius Rex*, consul 68 B.C., proconsul 67. Being denied a triumph on his return from Cilicia, he refused to give up his command, preferring to remain outside the walls of Rome. He was sent to Faesulae to watch the movements of Manlius.

**Marius**, -ī, m., *C. Marius*, a famous leader of the popular party at Rome, born 157 B.C., near Arpinum, the birthplace of Cicero; served under Metellus in Numidia, later superseded him and in 106 conquered Jugurtha, whose story is the subject of Sallust's *Jugurthine war*; vanquished another enemy of long standing, the *Cimbri* and *Teutons*, 102 and 101; trained up Sulla, who became his rival and drove him from Rome; Marius returned, however, and the scenes of this civil war beggar description; he died 86, in his seventh consulship.

**Massilia**, -ae, f, *Massilia*, now Marseilles, a city of southern France.

**Maurētānia**, -ae, f., *Mauretania*, in northwest Africa, now Morocco.

**Metellus**, -ī, m., (1) *Q. Caecilius Metellus Celer*, praetor 63 B.C., consul 60, sent to Picenum, where he succeeded in raising troops and preventing Catiline's escape into Gaul.

(2) *Q. Caecilius Metellus Creticus*, consul 69 B.C., victorious over Crete 67. Being denied a triumph, he kept his station outside Rome until dispatched to Apulia to suppress anticipated uprisings in favor of Catiline.

**Mithridāticus**, -a, -um, adj., of *Mithridates*, *Mithridatic*.

**Mulvius**, -a, -um, adj., *Mulvian*; *Pons Mulvius*, the *Mulvian* bridge, over the Tiber two miles north of Rome on the Via Flaminia, built 109 B.C. by M. Aemilius Scaurus, the censor.

**Murēna**, -ae, m., *C. Licinius Murēna*, according to Sallust, though the correctness of the reading is seriously questioned (citerior or ulterior), governor of Cisalpine Gaul 63 B.C. We know that he had to stand trial for bribery and that he was defended by Cicero in a speech that is still extant.

## N

**Nerō**, -ōnis, m., *Ti. Claudius Nero*, a senator 63 B.C., grandfather of Tiberius, the emperor (14–37 A.D.).

**Nōbīlior**, -ōris, m., *M. Fulvius Nobīlior*, of equestrian rank and one of Catiline's followers.

**Nōnae**, -ārum, f. pl., the *Nones*. The ninth day before the Ides, or the seventh in March, May, July, October, and the fifth in all other months.

**November**, -bris, adj., *November*, of *November*.

**Nūcerīnus**, -ī, m., a citizen of *Nuceria*, a city in Campania near Naples.

## O

**Orestilla**, -ae, f., a female surname of the gēns *Aurēlia*; *Aurelia Orestilla*, the second wife of Catiline.

## P

**P.** = *Publius*.

**Paulus**, -ī, m., *L. Aemilius Paulus*, brother of Lepidus, who was the third member of the triumvirate with Antony and Octavian, charged Catiline with disturbing the public peace.

**Persēs**, -ae, m., *Perses* (or *Perseus*), the last king of Macedonia, defeated by L. Aemilius Paulus at Pydna 168 B.C., not the one just above, but his ancestor.

**Petreius**, -ī, m., *M. Petreius*, a lieutenant of the consul, C. Antonius; he was in command of the army which defeated Catiline in the battle of Pistoria.

**Picēnus**, -a, -um, adj., of *Picenum*, a district of east-central Italy.

**Pīsō**, -ōnis, m., *Cn. Calpurnius Piso*, involved in Catiline's first conspiracy (66 B.C.) to kill the consuls Cotta and Torquatus; failing in this, he went to Spain as quaestor, where he was murdered by the Spanish troops.

**Pistōriēnsis**, -e, adj., *Pistorian*, of *Pistoria*, a town in northern Etruria, where Catiline was defeated, now called Pistoia.

**Plautius**, -a, -um, adj., *Plautian*. The lēx *Plautia dē vī* was introduced by M. Plautius Silvanus, tribune of the plebs in 89 B.C., against disturbers of public peace.

**Pompeius, -ī, m.,** (1) *Cn. Pompeius Magnus*, born 106 B.C., first an aristocrat, then a popular hero, and again an aristocrat, consul with Crassus 70, subdued the pirates 67, Mithridates 66, formed triple alliance with Caesar and Crassus, and became Caesar's son-in-law 60, consul a second time with Crassus 55, sole consul 52, breaks with Caesar and joins aristocrats, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia 48, and murdered soon after in Egypt. Cicero eulogizes him in the Manilian Law. He was in Asia at the time of Catiline's conspiracy.

(2) *Q. Pompeius Rufus*, praetor 63 B.C., sent to Capua to help in quelling uprisings in favor of Catiline.

**Pomptinus, -ī, m.,** *C. Pomptinus*, praetor 63 B.C., one of the officers who arrested Volturcius and the Allobrogians, propraetor in Transalpine Gaul 61.

**Porcius, -a, -um, adj.,** *Porcian*; **lēx Porcia dē prōvocātiōne** (197 B.C.), a law of the tribune *P. Porcius Laeca*, which forbade any magistrate to scourge or kill a Roman citizen.

**Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj.,** *Punic, Carthaginian*.

## Q

**Q.** = *Quintus*.

## R

**Rēx**, see *Mārcius*.

**Rhodiū, -a, -um, adj.,** *of Rhodes*.

**Rhodiī, -ōrum, m. pl.,** *the Rhodians*, inhabitants of the famous island of Rhodes off the coast of Caria in Asia Minor.

**Rōma, -ae, f.,** *Rome*.

**Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj.,** *Roman*.

**Rōmānī, -ōrum, m. pl.,** *the Romans*.

**Rūfus**, see *Pompeius*.

## S

**Saenius, -ī, m.,** *L. Saenius*, a senator 63 B.C.

**Samnītēs, -ium, m. pl.,** *the Samnites, people of Samnium*, a district of south-central Italy, southeast of Rome.

**Sanga, -ae, m.,** see *Fabius*.

**Semprōnia, -ae, f.,** wife of D. Junius Brutus, an unvirtuous woman of great charm and ability, who was entangled in the Catilinarian conspiracy.

**Septimius, -ī, m.,** a citizen of Camerinum in Umbria, who helped Catiline in the district of Picenum.

**Ser.** = *Servius*.

**Sibyllinus, -a, -um, adj.,** *Sibylline*, named for the Sibyls, whose prophecies existed in three books, for which Tarquinius Superbus is reported to have paid the price which was asked for the original nine. These books were placed in the Capitol and consulted in situations of doubt. A new collection was made in 83 B.C. to replace the old ones which had been burned.

**Silānus, -ī, m.,** *D. Junius Silanus*, consul-elect 63 B.C., consul 62.

**Sittius, -ī, m.,** *P. Sittius*, a citizen of Nuceria in Campania, served in Mauritania presumably in the interests of the Catilinarian conspiracy.

**Spinther, -eris, m.,** see *Lentulus*.

**Statilius, -ī, m.,** *L. Statilius*, a knight and one of the Catilinarian conspirators who were caught and executed in 63 B.C.

**Sulla, -ae, m.,** (1) *L. Cornelius Sulla*, born 138 B.C., quaestor 107, served under Marius, praetor 93, leader of the aristocratic party, conquered Mithridates in the east, returned to Rome 83, defeated the party of Marius, killing thousands by proscription, dictator 82-79, retired to his estate at Puteoli, where he died in 78.

(2) *Ser. Cornelius Sulla*, brother of the dictator (1).

(3) *P. et Ser. Cornelius Sulla*, sons of *Ser. Cornelius Sulla* (2) and Catiline's confederates.

(4) *P. Cornelius Sulla*, a relative of the dictator's, consul-elect in 66 B.C., but never served because convicted of bribery. We have Cicero's speech in defense of Sulla on the charge of complicity in both Catilinarian conspiracies.

**Sullānus, -a, -um, adj.,** of *Sulla*.

**Sūra, -ae, m.,** see **Lentulus**.

## T

**T. = Titus.**

**Tarquinius, -ī, m.,** *L. Tarquinius*, an accomplice in Catiline's conspiracy, turned state's evidence and charged that the great Crassus was at least privy to the plans of the conspirators.

**Tarracinēnsis, -e, adj.,** *Tarracinian*, of *Tarracina*, a town in Latium; as a noun, m. and f., a citizen of *Tarracina*.

**Terentius, -ī, m.,** *Cn. Terentius*, a senator 63 B.C.

**Ti. = Tiberius.**

**Torquātus, -ī, m.,** see **Mānlius**.

**Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um,** *Transalpine*, beyond the Alps from Rome, or north of the Alps.

**Trānspadānus, -a, -um, adj.,** *Transpadanian*, beyond the Po.

**Trānspadānus, -ī, m.,** a *Transpadanian*, an inhabitant of northern Italy beyond the Po.

**Trōiānī, -ōrum, m. pl.,** *Trojans*, inhabitants of Troy in Asia Minor.

**Tulliānum, -ī, n.,** the *Tullianum*, a subterranean dungeon of the Mamertine prison at the foot of the Capitoline Hill in Rome, added by Servius Tullius, according to tradition; it is now a chapel to a small church.

**Tullius, -ī, m.,** see **Cicerō**.

**Tullus, -ī, m.,** *L. Volcatius Tullus*, consul in 66 B.C.

**Tūscī, -ōrum, m. pl.,** *Tuscans*, *Etrurians*, *Etruscans*, people of *Etruria* or modern Tuscany, in northwest-central Italy, north of Rome.

## U

**Umbrēnus, -ī, m.,** *P. Umbrenus*, a Roman freedman doing business in Gaul, who tried to enlist the help of the Allobrogiens on Catiline's side.

## V

**Valērius, -ī, m.,** see **Flaccus**.

**Vargunteius, -ī, m.,** *L. Vargunteius*, a senator, one of Catiline's confederates, one of the two who made an

unsuccessful attempt to assassinate Cicero.

**Vesta**, -ae, *Vesta*, the Roman goddess of the hearth, identical with the Greek Hestia, and closely connected with the Penates, or household gods.

**Volturcius**, -ī, m., *T. Volturcius* of Crotona, one of Catiline's conspirators, who, when arrested with the Allobrogians, turned state's evidence and was pardoned.



